Table of Contents

UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

(Mark One)

☒ **ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(D) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2019

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(D) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

FOR THE TRANSITION PERIOD FROM TO

COMMISSION FILE NUMBER 001-36485

ARDELYX, INC.
(EXACT NAME OF REGISTRANT AS SPECIFIED IN ITS CHARTER)

DELAWARE	26-1303944
(STATE OR OTHER JURISDICTION OF INCORPORATION OR ORGANIZATION)	(I.R.S. EMPLOYER IDENTIFICATION NO.)

34175 ARDENWOOD BLVD., SUITE 200, FREMONT, CALIFORNIA 94555
(ADDRESS OF PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICES, INCLUDING ZIP CODE)

(510) 745-1700
(REGISTRANT'S TELEPHONE NUMBER, INCLUDING AREA CODE)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of Each Class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of Each Exchange on Which Registered
Common Stock, par value $0.0001 per share	ARDX	The Nasdaq Global Market

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit such files). Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or an emerging growth company. See the definition of "large accelerated filer", "accelerated filer", "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ☐	Accelerated filer ☒
Non-accelerated filer ☐	Small reporting company ☒
	Emerging growth company ☐

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of the Registrant's common stock held by non-affiliates of the Registrant as of the last business day of the Registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, June 30, 2019, based on the last reported sales price of the Registrant's common stock of $2.69 per share was $125,911,696.

The number of shares of Registrant's Common Stock outstanding as of March 3, 2020, was 88,929,668.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE:

Portions of the Registrant's Definitive Proxy Statement for its 2020 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, which will be filed with the Commission within 120 days of December 31, 2019, the close of the Registrant's 2019 fiscal year, are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Report.

ARDELYX, INC.
FORM 10-K FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2019
TABLE OF CONTENTS

NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Unless the context requires otherwise, in this Annual Report on Form 10-K the terms “Ardelyx”, “we,” “us,” “our” and “the Company” refer to Ardelyx, Inc.

This Annual Report on Form 10-K contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Any statements contained herein that are not statements of historical facts may be deemed to be forward-looking statements. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as “aim,” “anticipate,” “assume,” “believe,” “continue,” “could,” “due,” “estimate,” “expect,” “goal,” “intend,” “may,” “objective,” “plan,” “predict,” “potential,” “positioned,” “seek,” “should,” “target,” “will,” “would,” and other similar expressions that are predictions of or indicate future events and future trends, or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. These forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- our expectations regarding our plans for and our participation in the commercialization of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in chronic kidney disease, or CKD, patients on dialysis, including our expectations regarding our plans to build our own sales and marketing organization to market and sell tenapanor for such indication;
- our plans to seek one or more collaboration partners to commercialize tenapanor for irritable bowel syndrome with constipation, or IBS-C, rather than to commercialize tenapanor for this indication on our own;
- our expectations regarding the potential market size and the size of the patient populations for our product candidates;
- our plans with respect to our pre-clinical programs;
- our ability to identify and validate targets and novel drug candidates using our proprietary drug discovery and design platform including the Ardelyx Primary Enterocyte and Colonocyte Culture System, or APECCS, or any other proprietary drug discovery and design platform we develop for the identification, screening, testing, design and development of new product candidates for the treatment of renal diseases;
- the implementation of our business model and strategic plans for our business, product candidates and technology;
- estimates of our expenses, future revenue, capital requirements, our needs for additional financing and our ability to obtain additional capital;
- our financial performance; and
- developments and projections relating to our competitors and our industry.

Factors that could cause actual results or conditions to differ from those anticipated by these and other forward-looking statements include those more fully described in the “ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS” section and elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update any forward-looking statement publicly, or to revise any forward-looking statement to reflect events or developments occurring after the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, even if new information becomes available in the future. Thus, you should not assume that our silence over time means that actual events are bearing out as expressed or implied in any such forward-looking statement.

ITEM 1. BUSINESS

Company overview

We are a specialized biopharmaceutical company focused on developing first-in-class medicines to improve treatment for people with cardiorenal diseases. This includes patients with CKD on dialysis suffering from elevated serum phosphorus, or hyperphosphatemia; and CKD patients and/or heart failure patients with elevated serum potassium, or hyperkalemia. Our lead program is tenapanor, a first-in-class medicine in late-stage clinical development for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis. Tenapanor has a unique mechanism of action and acts locally in the gut to inhibit the sodium hydrogen exchanger 3, or NHE3. This results in the tightening of the epithelial cell junctions, thereby significantly reducing paracellular uptake of phosphate, the primary pathway of phosphate absorption.

We have evaluated tenapanor in a Phase 3 program for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. In December 2019, we reported statistically significant topline efficacy results from our second monotherapy Phase 3 clinical trial, the PHREEDOM trial. The PHREEDOM trial is a one-year study with a 26-week open-label treatment period and a 12-week double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized withdrawal period followed by a 14-week open-label safety extension period. An active safety control group, for safety analysis only, received sevelamer, open-label, for the entire 52-week study period. Patients completing the PHREEDOM trial from both the tenapanor arm and the sevelamer active safety control arm had the option to participate in NORMALIZE, an ongoing open-label 18-month extension study. The goal of this study is to further our understanding of the potential for the dual mechanism of tenapanor and sevelamer to reduce patients' serum phosphorus levels towards normal (<4.6 mg/dL) while minimizing medication burden. The PHREEDOM trial followed a successful monotherapy Phase 3 clinical trial completed in 2017, which achieved statistical significance for the primary endpoint . In addition, in September 2019, we reported positive results from the AMPLIFY trial, a Phase 3 study evaluating tenapanor in patients with CKD on dialysis who had uncontrolled hyperphosphatemia despite phosphate binder treatment.

We are preparing to submit a New Drug Application, or NDA, to the United States Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in adult patients with CKD on dialysis in mid-2020. Tenapanor, if approved, would be the first therapy for phosphate management that is not a phosphate binder. As tenapanor is a novel, potent, small molecule there would be significantly less pill burden than with phosphate binders. Tenapanor is dosed as a single pill, twice-daily, which we believe could greatly improve patient adherence and compliance and free patients from having to take multiple pills before every meal.

We are also advancing a small molecule potassium secretagogue program, RDX013, for the potential treatment of hyperkalemia. Hyperkalemia is a common problem in patients with heart and kidney disease, particularly in patients taking common blood pressure medications known as RAAS inhibitors, which inhibit the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Similar to what we have done with tenapanor in developing a non-binder approach for the treatment of elevated serum phosphate levels, RDX013 is designed to offer a non-binder alternative to lowering elevated potassium with a much lower pill burden than potassium binders and we believe may provide significant advantages as a stand-alone agent or in combination with potassium binders.

In addition to the development of tenapanor in our cardiorenal portfolio, we have developed tenapanor for the treatment of patients with IBS-C. On September 12, 2019, we received US FDA approval of IBSRELA® (tenapanor) for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome with constipation (IBS-C) in adults. IBS-C is a burdensome gastrointestinal, or GI, disorder affecting a significant number of people. It is characterized by significant abdominal pain, constipation, straining during bowel movements, bloating and/or gas.

By inhibiting NHE3 on the apical surface of the enterocytes, tenapanor reduces absorption of sodium from the small intestine and colon, resulting in an increase in water secretion into the intestinal lumen, which accelerates intestinal transit time and results in a softer stool consistency. Tenapanor has also been shown to reduce abdominal pain by decreasing visceral hypersensitivity and by decreasing intestinal permeability in animal models. In rat model of colonic hypersensitivity, tenapanor reduced visceral hyperalgesia and normalized colonic sensory neuronal excitability.

Our Commercial Strategy

We aim to build a multi-product company that commercializes its cardiorenal products in the United States. Our strategy is to leverage ex-U.S. collaborations with established industry leaders to efficiently bring our cardiorenal medicines and tenapanor for IBS-C to patients outside the United States. Our plan is to bring tenapanor for IBS-C to market in the United States by leveraging domestic collaborations rather than by commercializing tenapanor for IBS-C on our own.

We currently have three collaboration partnerships: with Kyowa Kirin Co., Ltd., or KKC, for commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases, including hyperphosphatemia, in Japan; with Shanghai Fosun Pharmaceutical Industrial Development Co. Ltd., or Fosun Pharma, for the commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C and hyperphosphatemia in China; and with Knight Therapeutics, Inc., or Knight, for commercialization of tenapanor in Canada.

OUR PROPRIETARY DRUG DISCOVERY AND DESIGN PLATFORM

We have successfully developed and expect to continue to employ our APECCS stem cell platform to emulate, in a miniaturized format, the function and structure of cells of specific segments of the intestine. In line with our overall strategy to focus on our cardiorenal pipeline, our research supports tenapanor, RDX013 and other potential cardiorenal opportunities, and we expect to continue our efforts to develop a system, similar to APECCS for the kidney.

OUR PRODUCT PIPELINE

Tenapanor: A New Approach for The Control of Serum Phosphorus in CKD Patients on Dialysis

Our lead product candidate in our cardiorenal portfolio is tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis. Hyperphosphatemia, or elevated serum phosphorus, is an independent predictor of morbidity and mortality in patients with CKD and is a significant problem among dialysis patients worldwide.

CKD is the progressive deterioration of renal function that can occur over several months or years. The symptoms of worsening kidney function are nonspecific, and can include having less energy, reduced appetite, dry itchy skin, swollen feet and ankles or generally just not feeling well. If the deterioration continues and is not halted by changes in lifestyle or with the assistance of pharmacological intervention, the disease will likely cause significant cardiovascular morbidity, and can progress to the final stage of CKD where kidney function will be lost entirely.

Current management of CKD includes hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis as a means to filter toxins from the blood once kidneys have failed. Unless this intervention occurs, kidney failure results in the accumulation of waste products that may ultimately cause death. Hemodialysis, the most common form of dialysis, generally requires a patient to visit a dialysis center at least three times per week for a minimum three-hour session, significantly reducing quality of life.

Phosphorus, a vital element required for most cellular processes, is present in almost every food in the Western diet, and, in individuals with normal kidney function, any excess dietary phosphorus is efficiently removed by the kidneys and excreted in urine. In adults with functioning kidneys normal serum phosphorus levels are 2.5 to 4.5 mg/dL. With kidney failure, elevated phosphorus becomes harmful and is typically diagnosed as hyperphosphatemia when serum phosphorus levels are greater than 4.5 mg/dL, according to guidelines published by KDIGO, the global nonprofit foundation dedicated to improving the care and outcomes of kidney disease patients worldwide. Phosphorus levels greater than 5.5 mg/dL have been shown to be an independent risk factor for cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in dialysis patients, and common treatment goals are to manage serum phosphorus to less than 5.5 mg/dL. Although patients with CKD rely on dialysis to eliminate harmful agents, phosphorus is not readily removed by the procedure and other means of managing phosphorus levels must be employed. Studies have shown that 95% of CKD patients on dialysis need phosphate control.

In CKD patients on dialysis, excess levels of phosphorus have been shown to lead to an increase in cardiovascular disease risk, as well as increases in serum FGF-23, an important regulator of phosphate and vitamin D metabolism. Highly elevated levels of FGF23 is an independent risk factor for adverse cardiac clinical outcomes as well as the development of secondary hyperparathyroidism, or SHPT, marked by elevated parathyroid hormone. SHPT is associated with renal osteodystrophy, a condition of abnormal bone growth characterized by brittle bones.

Since dialysis is unable to efficiently eliminate excess phosphorus, CKD patients on dialysis are put on restrictive, low phosphorus diets and are currently prescribed medications called phosphate binders, the only interventions currently available for the control of serum phosphorus. Phosphate binders, which usually need to be taken with meals and snacks, act by binding dietary phosphorus and limiting its absorption. Phosphate binders have multiple limitations, including:

- systemic excess absorption of calcium, iron or lanthanum, resulting in side effects and other unintended consequences for CKD patients on dialysis;
- significant challenges with patient adherence because of the large quantity and/or mass of the binders that must be taken each day; and
- significant GI tolerability issues making frequent dosing difficult for patients

Safety and tolerability have also been significant concerns with many approved phosphate binders, with side effects that include long-term vascular calcification with calcium-based binders and iron-overload with iron-based binders. Common side effects of many approved phosphate binders include GI-related adverse events such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, and dyspepsia as well as hypercalcemia for calcium-based binders and discolored feces for iron-based binders.

CKD patients on dialysis, who generally are severely restricted in their fluid intake, are prescribed as many as 12 or more phosphate binder pills per day, among other medications. The amount of phosphorus a binder can remove is limited by its binding capacity, and therefore, increasing the dose, and hence the pill burden, of the binder is the only way to increase the amount of phosphorus being bound and excreted. As a result of pill burden and mass, as well as a number of side effects, on average one out of two patients is not compliant with their prescribed treatment and two out of three patients at any point in time are not at target serum phosphorus levels.

We are developing tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis, as we believe it has the potential to address certain of the key limitations of current treatments and offer a completely new mechanism of action. If approved, tenapanor will be the first small molecule/non-binder treatment for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis, with a unique mechanism of action that acts by inhibiting, or blocking, the NHE3 transporter in the GI tract. Our scientists, in collaboration with global academic experts, discovered that phosphate absorption in humans occurs primarily through a dynamically regulated paracellular pathway. Inhibiting the NHE3 transporter with tenapanor results in the tightening of the epithelial cell junctions, thereby significantly reducing paracellular uptake of phosphate. This pathway of phosphate flux that is inhibited by tenapanor appears largely specific for phosphate, whereas the overall absorption of other ions and large molecules appear not to be affected. Notably, in clinical trials, tenapanor has not affected the absorption of other ions (except sodium) or nutrients. A consequence of intestinal NHE3 inhibition is that systemic sodium absorption is reduced leading to an increase in stool sodium and water content, loosening stool consistency and increasing bowel movement frequency. Tenapanor's unique mechanism of action inhibiting paracellular phosphate absorption was published in the peer-reviewed journal *Science Translational Medicine*.

This unique mechanism of action could allow tenapanor to be active in many patients at a dose of 10 mg to 30 mg twice daily as opposed to the multiple gram quantities per day required of the phosphate binders. Over the course of a week, the amount of tenapanor required would be less than 500 milligrams, or a total of 14 small pills, whereas the amount of phosphate binder required, based on package inserts, would be 10 to 30 grams, or up to 63 large pills, depending on the phosphate binder. We believe this significant pill burden advantage will result in better adherence and compliance which could lead to more consistent efficacy in patients with CKD on dialysis.

Tenapanor has been specifically designed to work exclusively within the GI tract, thereby significantly reducing the amount of drug that is absorbed into the bloodstream and the potential side effects that could occur. In human studies of orally-administered tenapanor, the drug was detected in the blood in less than 1% in thousands of collected serum samples, and even in those, at very low levels (< 1.5 ng/mL). We have evaluated tenapanor in 24 clinical studies in over 3,100 individuals to date.

Clinical data supporting tenapanor in hyperphosphatemia

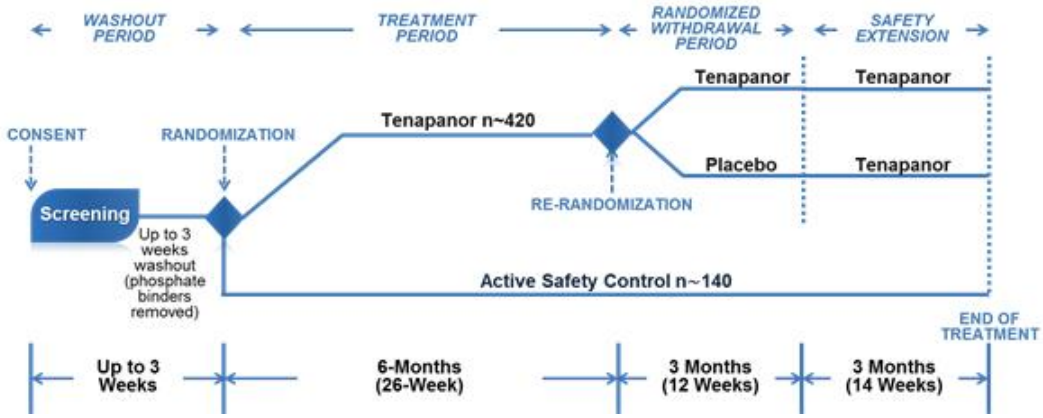
We have completed three Phase 3 trials evaluating tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, with two trials evaluating tenapanor as monotherapy and one trial evaluating tenapanor as part of a dual mechanism approach with binders.

In December 2019, we reported positive results from the PHREEDOM trial, our long-term Phase 3 study evaluating the efficacy and safety of tenapanor as a monotherapy for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis. The study's design, shown in Figure 1 below, includes a 26-week open-label treatment period and a 12-week double-blind, placebo controlled randomized withdrawal period followed by a 14-week open-label safety extension. The PHREEDOM study met its primary endpoint demonstrating a statistically significant difference in least square (LS) mean serum phosphorus change (-1.4 mg/dL, $p<0.0001$), as compared to placebo. During the 26-week treatment period, 77% of tenapanor-treated patients in the intent-to-treat population (n=408) had a decrease in serum phosphorus, with a mean reduction from baseline of 2.0 mg/dL.

Tenapanor was generally well-tolerated. As anticipated due to the mechanism of action, the most common self-reported adverse event was loose stools/diarrhea at an incidence rate of 52.5%, with approximately 90% of these events, judged by the investigator, to be mild to moderate in nature. The majority of the events were reported within the first five days of treatment and were transient in nature. In the 26-week open-label treatment period, 16% of the tenapanor-treated patients discontinued treatment due to diarrhea. During the randomized withdrawal period, only 0.8% of tenapanor-treated patients discontinued due to diarrhea.

In the safety analysis set of the 26-week open-label treatment period, which included tenapanor (n=419) and sevelamer (n=137), 17.2% of tenapanor-treated patients compared to 22.6% of sevelamer-treated patients experienced a serious adverse event. The median dose for tenapanor was 60 milligrams per day throughout the study and the median dose for sevelamer was 4.8 grams per day after randomization and increased to 7.2 grams per day by the end of the 26-week open-label treatment period.

Figure 1. PHREEDOM Clinical Trial Design



Patients completing the PHREEDOM trial from both the tenapanor arm and the sevelamer active safety control arm had the option to participate in NORMALIZE, an ongoing open-label 18-month extension study. The goal of this study is to further our understanding of the potential for the dual mechanism of tenapanor and sevelamer to reduce patients' serum phosphorus levels towards normal (<4.6 mg/dL) while minimizing medication burden. Patients entering the study from the tenapanor arm with serum phosphorus levels in the normal range are followed with no medication changes. Patients entering the study from the tenapanor arm with serum phosphorus ≥4.6 mg/dL have sevelamer tablets added incrementally to achieve normal serum phosphorus levels. Patients entering the study from the sevelamer active safety control arm have tenapanor tablets added to their treatment regimen and have sevelamer tablets withdrawn based on their serum phosphorus value, to achieve normal serum phosphorus levels. In December 2019, we announced initial results from NORMALIZE, noting that as of the date of the initial analysis, 96% of eligible patients had chosen to enroll into NORMALIZE. Of the 73 patients that had been treated for more than one month of treatment as of the date of the initial analysis, 42% had achieved normal serum phosphorus of less than 4.6 mg/dL and of those, 58% had accomplished this with either tenapanor alone or with tenapanor in combination with only one to three sevelamer tablets per day. These data represent a 45% improvement compared to current treatment practice data reported in the June 2019 Dialysis Outcomes Practice Patterns Study (DOPPS) Practice Monitor.

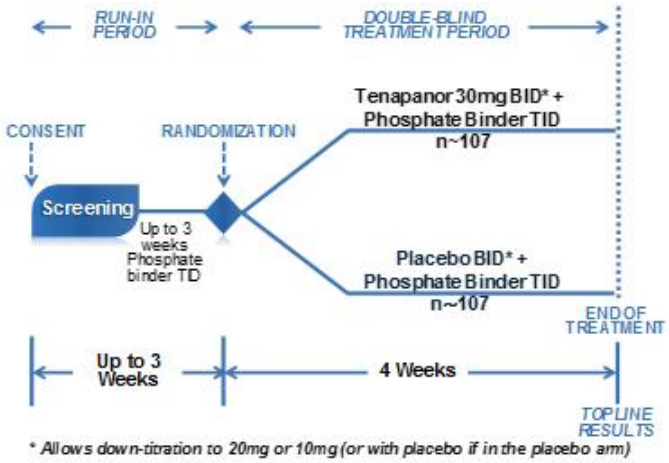
In September 2019, we reported statistically significant results from AMPLIFY, a Phase 3 study of tenapanor evaluating the dual mechanism of tenapanor in combination with phosphate binders in patients with CKD on dialysis whose hyperphosphatemia was not controlled with binders alone.

The AMPLIFY study design, shown in Figure 2, was a double-blind, placebo- controlled, randomized study that enrolled a total of 236 patients with CKD on dialysis who, despite a high and stable phosphate binder regime, had serum phosphorus levels greater than or equal to 5.5mg/dL and less than or equal to 10.0mg/dL at screening. After a run-in of two to four weeks, patients were then randomized 1:1 to receive the addition of tenapanor or placebo twice daily while continuing their established phosphate binder regimen. Baseline serum phosphorus at randomization was at a mean of 6.8mg/dL. Tenapanor was initiated at a starting dose of 30 mg twice daily with tenapanor dose adjustments allowed based on tolerability and serum phosphorus levels. The primary endpoint of the study was the comparison of the change from baseline in serum phosphorus levels at week 4 between placebo or tenapanor and binder arms. The key secondary endpoints included a comparison of the proportion of patients achieving a serum phosphorus level below 5.5 mg/dL at week four and relative change from baseline in FGF23 levels between the tenapanor and binder arms at week four.

For the primary endpoint, patients in the tenapanor arm (tenapanor in combination with phosphate binders, n=116) had a statistically significant (p=0.0004) mean reduction in serum phosphorus from baseline to the end of the four-week treatment period of 0.84 mg/dL, as compared to those treated in the binder arm (placebo in combination with phosphate binders, n=119) who had a mean reduction of 0.19 mg/dL. Patients in the tenapanor arm had statistically significant decreases in serum phosphorus during all four weeks ranging from 0.84 to 1.21 mg/dL (p-values <0.0004). During the treatment period, up to 49.1% of patients in the tenapanor arm achieved a serum phosphorus of <5.5 mg/dL which was statistically significant compared with up to 23.5% in the binder arm (p-values≤0.0097). In addition, over the 4-week period there were statistically significant reductions in both intact and c-terminus FGF23 levels: 22% to 24% (p-values≤0.0027) respectively. Although exploratory in nature, we believe this is a notable result as increasing levels of FGF23 have a linear association with all-cause mortality and an increased risk of major cardiovascular events.

Tenapanor was well tolerated. Only 4.3% of patients in the tenapanor arm discontinued treatment compared to 2.5% in the binder arm. The single adverse event with a placebo-adjusted rate greater than 3% was loose stools/diarrhea at 36%, where most incidents were reported within the first five days of treatment, were transient in nature and the median time to resolution was four days. Notably, only 2.6% of patients in the tenapanor arm discontinued treatment due to loose stools/diarrhea, as compared to 0.8% in the binder arm. There were no serious adverse events related to tenapanor.

Figure 2. AMPLIFY Clinical Trial Design



In February 2017, we announced data from our first Phase 3 clinical trial evaluating the efficacy and safety of tenapanor as a monotherapy for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis. The Phase 3 trial was an eight-week, double-blind, randomized trial, with a four-week placebo-controlled randomized withdrawal period. The study demonstrated a statistically significant difference in serum phosphorus levels from the end of the eight-week treatment period to the end of the four-week randomized withdrawal between the tenapanor-treated group and the placebo-treated group in the efficacy analysis population (mean -1.01 mg/dL, median of -1.3 mg/dL) and met its primary endpoint (95% confidence interval, -1.44, -0.21, LSmean -0.82 mg/dL, p=0.01).

Tenapanor was well-tolerated in the trial. In the eight-week treatment period, the only adverse event that affected more than five percent of patients treated with tenapanor was diarrhea (39%), a patient-reported side effect of loosened stool or increased frequency in bowel movements regardless of magnitude. In the four-week randomized withdrawal period, there was a diarrhea rate of 1.2% for patients treated with tenapanor compared with 2.4% on placebo. Treatment discontinuations due to diarrhea during the eight-week treatment period for patients on tenapanor was 7.8% (n=17). There were no discontinuations due to diarrhea during in the randomized withdrawal period.

The hyperphosphatemia market

Phosphate binders are the only drugs marketed for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. The various types of phosphate binders commercialized in the United States include the following:

- Calcium carbonate (many over-the-counter brands including Tums and Caltrate);
- Calcium acetate (several prescription brands including PhosLo and Phoslyra);
- Lanthanum carbonate (Fosrenol);
- Sevelamer hydrochloride (Renagel);
- Sevelamer carbonate (Renvela);
- Sucroferric oxyhydroxide (Velphoro); and
- Ferric citrate (Auryxia).

The hydrochloride form of sevelamer, Renagel, was launched in the United States by Genzyme Corporation in 1998 prior to its acquisition by Sanofi, and the carbonate form, Renvela, was launched in 2008. Generic sevelamer carbonate has been approved in certain jurisdictions in Europe since 2015 and in the U.S. market since June 2017.

In addition to the currently marketed phosphate binders, we are aware of at least two other binders in development, including fermagate (Alpharen), an iron-based binder in Phase 3 studies being developed by Opko Health, Inc., and PT20, an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Shield Therapeutics.

According to the most recent data available from the U.S. Renal Data System, in 2016 there were 457,957 patients on hemodialysis in the United States. Additionally, according to the European ERA-EDTA Registry 2016 Annual Report and a study in 2016 by the Japanese Society for Dialysis Therapy, there were approximately 327,000 patients on hemodialysis in Europe and about 329,000 in Japan. We estimate, based on phosphate binder utilization, the only approved therapies for hyperphosphatemia, that there are approximately 320,000, 260,000 and 289,000 end-stage renal disease, or ESRD, patients with hyperphosphatemia in the United States, countries in Europe and Japan, respectively, resulting in approximately 869,000 ESRD patients with hyperphosphatemia in such countries.

Because many CKD patients on dialysis with hyperphosphatemia are unable to lower serum phosphorus levels to below 5.5 mg/dL with currently marketed phosphate binders, we believe there is a significant medical need for new agents with new mechanisms, demonstrated efficacy, a strong safety profile, and significantly lower pill burden. We believe that tenapanor, if approved, has the potential to have the lowest pill burden and mass among any currently marketed hyperphosphatemia products, with milligram rather than gram quantities. In addition, we are evaluating whether tenapanor has the potential to be used in combination with phosphate binders for those patients who cannot achieve adequate phosphate control with a single agent.

Our intention is to build a United States-focused, highly efficient, specialized sales and marketing organization focused on nephrology. The nephrology market is a concentrated market strongly influenced by key opinion leaders. There were 10,798 nephrologists in the United States in 2018 and 7,578 dialysis facilities in the United States that offer in-center dialysis. Based on the experience of our management team, we believe that a specialty salesforce is appropriate for this marketplace. We believe that tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus could represent a market opportunity of between $500 million and $700 million in the United States.

With its significantly reduced pill burden and well-tolerated safety profile, tenapanor, if approved, would be the only non-binder treatment for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis and would address the significant pill burden challenges and intolerability that patients experience with today's binder treatments. In the PHREEDOM trial we demonstrated tenapanor's ability to lower serum phosphorus as monotherapy, and in the AMPLIFY trial we demonstrated the benefits of a dual mechanism approach to lowering serum phosphorus with tenapanor plus binders in patients whose serum phosphorus was not previously controlled with binders alone. We believe that tenapanor has a role to play in the management of all dialysis patients with hyperphosphatemia. With the results from these clinical trials, we intend to submit a New Drug Application to the FDA in mid-2020 for tenapanor, for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis.

To bring tenapanor to patients outside the United States, we intend to establish strategic collaborations with industry leading pharmaceutical companies with established commercial infrastructures. We currently have three collaboration partnerships: with KKC for commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases, including hyperphosphatemia, in Japan; with Fosun Pharma for the commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C and hyperphosphatemia in China; and with Knight for commercialization of tenapanor in Canada.

RDX013 Program: Small Molecule for Treating Hyperkalemia

RDX013 is our novel, small molecule program for the potential treatment of hyperkalemia. Our RDX013 approach works by leveraging the GI tract's natural ability to secrete potassium into the lumen of the gut to reduce serum potassium levels. This mechanism differs significantly from the potassium binders currently on the market. For a potassium binder to work, it must be present when dietary potassium is ingested so that the agent can bind the potassium and prevent its absorption in the gut. This results in the need for large quantities of binder in order to bind the large

amounts of potassium in the diets of most individuals. In contrast, we observed in our preclinical models that a small amount of drug could cause potassium to be secreted into the lumen of the gut. In this way, we believe that with our approach in the RDX013 program, we may have the potential to lower serum potassium whether or not potassium is present in the diet and could result in a very low pill burden, potentially allowing better patient compliance, longer-term use and potentially better efficacy than potassium binders. As described below, certain medications commonly administered to patients with CKD and/or heart failure can also cause hyperkalemia. We believe that, if successful, our approach in the RDX013 program may provide nephrologists and cardiologists with an opportunity to treat hyperkalemia chronically without reducing the dose of these medications by utilizing an effective potassium secretagogue to treat hyperkalemia in a small, convenient pill format.

Hyperkalemia is generally defined as the presence of blood potassium levels greater than 5.0 mEq/L. Normal levels are 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L. When hyperkalemia is severe, above 7.0 mEq/L, there is a significantly increased risk of death because of the potential for heart conductance problems.

Hyperkalemia can be caused by a variety of issues. Kidney disease can result in the elevation of potassium in the blood, and certain drugs such as the common hypertension medications known as RAAS inhibitors, which inhibit the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, can cause hyperkalemia. As a result, the dosage of RAAS inhibitors must often be significantly reduced in patients whose potassium levels are elevated, such as in those with CKD and heart failure. Because of the risk of hyperkalemia, several published guidelines have suggested that physicians should reduce and possibly discontinue RAAS inhibitors in order to manage the risk of hyperkalemia in CKD and heart failure patients. The alternative medications used to control hypertension, including diuretics and calcium channel blockers, are less effective than RAAS inhibitors, particularly in patients with failing kidneys and severe hypertension. According to the 2015 publication Market Dynamix: Hyperkalemia, released by Spherix Global Insights, U.S. cardiologists reported that of the patients who would benefit from RAAS inhibition, up to 38% of patients with heart failure and up to 55% of patients with both heart failure and CKD are being administered a sub-optimal dose or none at all. Nephrologists reported that at least one-third of patients who would benefit from RAAS inhibition receive a sub-optimal dose or none at all. We believe there is clearly a strong medical need for new medications that control hyperkalemia in order to allow for optimal use of RAAS inhibitors to control hypertension in these patient populations.

The hyperkalemia market

Of the people with CKD and/or heart failure in the United States, we estimate that there are approximately 2.1 million people who also have occurrences of hyperkalemia. According to a retrospective study conducted in 2005 of a national cohort of 246,000 patients cared for in the Veterans Health Administration, about 21% and 42% of patients with CKD Stage 3b and Stage 4, respectively, had a hyperkalemic event during a 12-month period, suggesting that hyperkalemia affects about 900,000 individuals with CKD Stage 3b or Stage 4 in the United States. According to the United States Renal Data System 2014 Atlas of CKD & ESRD, over 50% of CKD Stage 3b and Stage 4 patients are prescribed RAAS inhibitors to control hypertension and to slow the course of CKD.

Additionally, the number of adults in the U.S. living with heart failure is about 6.5 million, based on data collected in the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, which is taken in stages over multiple years. Our proprietary research suggests that up to 16%, or approximately 1.0 million, of these patients had hyperkalemia during a 12-month period. Over half of heart failure patients are prescribed RAAS inhibitors. Our proprietary research also suggests that up to 200,000 CKD patients on dialysis in the U.S. could benefit from an agent that treats hyperkalemia.

We are aware of at least two drugs on the market for the treatment of hyperkalemia. Veltassa (patiromer FOS), an oral, polymer-based potassium binder, was approved for marketing by the FDA in October 2015 and was commercially launched by Relypsa, which was acquired by Galenica AG in September 2016. Additionally, Lokelma (sodium zirconium cyclosilicate), an oral, potassium binder developed by ZS Pharma, acquired by AstraZeneca in December 2015, was approved in May 2018 and launched by AstraZeneca.

We believe that, unlike these agents which require large amounts of drug for the desired effect, RDX013 may have the potential to lower serum potassium whether or not potassium is present in the diet and could result in very low pill burden, allowing better compliance, longer-term use and potentially better efficacy than potassium binders.

If we are successful in developing RDX013 and obtaining marketing authorization from the FDA, we would expect to leverage the renal sales and marketing organization that we intend to build to support commercialization in the United States of tenapanor for treating hyperphosphatemia in dialysis patients.

IBSRELA® (tenapanor) for Irritable Bowel Syndrome with Constipation (IBS-C)

On September 12, 2019, we received US FDA approval of IBSRELA (tenapanor) for the treatment of IBS-C in adults. To efficiently bring this treatment to market, we are pursuing strategic collaborations for IBSRELA for IBS-C in certain territories. We have established agreements with Fosun Pharma in China and Knight in Canada.

IBS-C is a burdensome GI disorder affecting a significant number of people. It is characterized by significant abdominal pain, constipation, straining during bowel movements, bloating and/or gas.

IBSRELA (tenapanor) is a locally acting inhibitor of the sodium/hydrogen exchanger 3 (NHE3), an antiporter expressed on the apical surface of the small intestine and colon primarily responsible for the absorption of dietary sodium. By inhibiting NHE3 on the apical surface of the enterocytes, tenapanor reduces absorption of sodium from the small intestine and colon, resulting in an increase in water secretion into the intestinal lumen, which accelerates intestinal transit time and results in a softer stool consistency.

The IBS-C market

Numerous treatments exist for the constipation component of IBS-C, many of which are over-the-counter. There are four prescription products marketed for IBS-C: Linzess (linaclotide); Amitiza (lubiprostone); Trulance (plecanatide) and Zelnorm (tegaserod).

Within the United States, there are approximately 11 million patients that suffer from IBS-C. There is significant unmet need for prescription medications, where, according a 2015 American Gastroenterological Association report, only one in four treated patients are very satisfied with the current FDA approved treatments in IBS-C.

OUR STRATEGIC PARTNERSHIPS

License Agreement with KKC

In November 2017, we entered into a license agreement, the 2017 KKC Agreement, with KKC under which we granted KKC an exclusive license to develop and commercialize tenapanor in Japan for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases and conditions, excluding cancer, the KKC Field. We retained the rights to tenapanor outside of Japan, and also retained the rights to tenapanor in Japan for indications other than those in the KKC Field. Pursuant to the 2017 KKC Agreement, KKC is responsible for all of the development and commercialization costs for tenapanor in the KKC Field in Japan.

Under the 2017 KKC Agreement, we are responsible for supplying the tenapanor drug substance for KKC's use in development and commercialization throughout the term of the 2017 KKC Agreement, provided that KKC may exercise an option to manufacture the tenapanor drug substance under certain conditions.

Under the terms of the 2017 KKC Agreement, we received a $30.0 million upfront payment and are eligible to receive up to $55.0 million in total development milestones, of which we have received $5.0 million to date. Additionally, under the 2017 KKC Agreement we are eligible to receive up to 8.5 billion yen in commercialization milestones, worth up to $78.3 million at the exchange rate on December 31, 2019, and royalties based on aggregate annual net sales of the licensed products at a high teens percentage, subject to certain single digit reductions under certain circumstances described in the 2017 KKC Agreement.

The 2017 KKC Agreement will continue until all of KKC's applicable payment obligations under the 2017 KKC Agreement have been performed or have expired, or the agreement is earlier terminated. Under the terms of the 2017 KKC Agreement, we and KKC each have the right to terminate the agreement for material breach by the other

party. In addition, KKC may terminate the agreement for convenience; for certain safety reasons or if certain primary endpoints under an applicable development plan are not met despite KKC's commercially reasonable efforts and KKC reasonably determines that it cannot obtain regulatory approval. KKC may also terminate the agreement if certain pivotal clinical trials conducted by us do not meet their primary endpoints. We may terminate the 2017 KKC Agreement if KKC challenges any patents licensed to KKC under the agreement.

Research Collaboration with KKC

In November 2019, we expanded our strategic partnership with KKC with a separate research agreement. In the agreement, we established a two-year research collaboration, whereby we will execute a research plan, in which KKC will also join, to advance two of our ongoing research programs focused on identification and design of compounds to two undisclosed targets. In return, KKC will pay us $10.0 million ($5.0 million a year, for two years), of which we have received $5.0 million to date, to support the ongoing research. Following the end of the research period, KKC will have the option to license any candidates nominated by the companies for further development and commercialization in certain specified territories, with additional commitments payable to us of up to $10.5 million in upfront payments and up to $500.0 million in development and sales milestones.

License agreement with Fosun

In December 2017, we entered into a license agreement, the Fosun License Agreement, with Fosun Pharma under which we granted Fosun Pharma an exclusive license to develop and commercialize tenapanor in China for the treatment, diagnosis or prevention of irritable bowel syndrome with constipation and chronic idiopathic constipation, hyperphosphatemia related to chronic kidney disease, and other diseases or conditions for which we obtain marketing approval in either the US or China, collectively, the Fosun Field. The Fosun Field excludes the treatment of cancer. We retained the rights to tenapanor outside of China, and also retained the rights to tenapanor in China for indications other than those in the Fosun Field. Pursuant to the terms of the Fosun License Agreement, Fosun Pharma is responsible for all of the development and commercialization costs for tenapanor in the Fosun Field in China.

Under the terms of the Fosun License Agreement, we are responsible for supplying the tenapanor drug product for Fosun Pharma's use in development and during commercialization until Fosun Pharma has assumed such responsibility. Additionally, we are responsible for supplying the tenapanor drug substance for Fosun Pharma's use in development and commercialization throughout the term of the Fosun License Agreement.

Under the terms of the Fosun License Agreement, we received an upfront payment of $12.0 million and are eligible to receive additional milestones of up to $113.0 million in the aggregate, of which we have recognized and received $3.0 million to date, as well as tiered royalty payments on aggregate net sales ranging from the mid-teens percent to twenty percent, subject to certain reductions under certain circumstances, as described in the Fosun License Agreement.

The Fosun License Agreement will continue until all of Fosun Pharma's applicable payment obligations under the License Agreement have been performed or have expired, or the agreement is earlier terminated. Under the terms of the Fosun License Agreement, we and Fosun Pharma each have the right to terminate the agreement for material breach by the other party or in the event of insolvency by the other party. In addition, Fosun Pharma may terminate the agreement for convenience, and we may terminate the agreement if Fosun Pharma challenges any patents licensed to it under the agreement.

License agreement with Knight Therapeutics

In March 2018, we entered into a license agreement with Knight that provides Knight with exclusive rights to commercialize tenapanor in Canada. Under the terms of the agreement, Ardelyx is eligible to receive up to CAD 25 million in total payments, worth up to $19.2 million at the currency exchange rate on December 31, 2019, including an upfront payment and development and sales milestones, as well as tiered royalties on net sales ranging from the mid-single digits to the low twenties. Knight will have the exclusive rights to market and sell tenapanor in Canada.

CORPORATE DEVELOPMENT

In December 2019, we completed an underwritten public offering of 23,000,000 shares of common stock, resulting in the receipt of aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $143.8 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses.

Additionally, in November 2019, we enhanced our strategic partnership with KKC by entering into a stock purchase agreement, pursuant to which we sold to KKC an aggregate of 2,873,563 shares of our common stock for aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $20.0 million.

As of December 31, 2019, we had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments totaling $247.5 million.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Our commercial success depends in part on our ability to obtain and maintain proprietary protection for our drug candidates, manufacturing and process discoveries, and other know-how, to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of others and to prevent others from infringing our proprietary rights. Our policy is to seek to protect our intellectual property by, among other methods, filing U.S. and foreign patent applications related to our proprietary technology and inventions that are important to the development and operation of our business. We also rely on trade secrets and careful monitoring of our proprietary information to protect aspects of our business that are not amenable to, or that we do not consider appropriate for, patent protection.

The patent positions of biopharmaceutical companies like us are generally uncertain and involve complex legal, scientific and factual questions. In addition, the coverage claimed in a patent application can be significantly reduced before the patent is issued, and its scope can be reinterpreted after issuance. Consequently, we do not know whether any of our product candidates will be protectable or remain protected by enforceable patents. We cannot predict whether the patent applications we are currently pursuing will issue as patents in any particular jurisdiction or whether the claims of our issued patents will provide sufficient proprietary protection from competitors. Any patents that we hold may be challenged, circumvented or invalidated by third parties. If third parties prepare and file patent applications in the United States that also claim technology or therapeutics to which we have rights, we may have to participate in interference proceedings in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, to determine priority of invention, which would result in substantial costs to us even if the eventual outcome is favorable to us.

The term of individual patents depends upon the legal term of the patents in countries in which they are obtained. In most countries, including the United States, the patent term is generally 20 years from the earliest date of filing a non-provisional patent application in the applicable country. In the United States, a patent’s term may, in certain cases, be lengthened by patent term adjustment, which compensates a patentee for administrative delays by the USPTO in examining and granting a patent, or may be shortened if a patent is terminally disclaimed over a commonly owned patent or a patent naming a common inventor and having an earlier expiration date.

In addition, in the United States, the Hatch-Waxman Act permits a patent term extension of up to five years beyond the expiration of a U.S. patent as partial compensation for the patent term lost during the FDA regulatory review process occurring while the patent is in force. A patent extension cannot extend the remaining term of a patent beyond a total of 14 years from the date of product approval, and only one patent applicable to each regulatory review period may be extended and only those claims covering the approved drug, a method for using it or a method for manufacturing it may be extended. Similar provisions are available in the European Union and certain other foreign jurisdictions to extend the term of a patent that covers an approved drug.

We may rely, in some circumstances, on trade secrets to protect our technology. Although we take steps to protect our proprietary information and trade secrets, including through contractual means with our employees and consultants, third parties may independently develop substantially equivalent proprietary information and techniques or otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or disclose our technology. Thus, we may not be able to meaningfully protect our trade secrets. It is our policy to require our employees, consultants, outside scientific collaboration partners, sponsored researchers and other advisors to execute confidentiality agreements upon the commencement of employment

or consulting relationships with us. These agreements provide that all confidential information concerning the business or financial affairs developed or made known to the individual during the course of the individual's relationship with us is to be kept confidential and not disclosed to third parties except in specific circumstances. In the case of employees, the agreements provide that all inventions conceived by the individual, and which are related to our current or planned business or research and development or made during the normal working hours, on our premises or using our equipment or proprietary information, are our exclusive property.

Tenapanor patents

Our tenapanor patent portfolio is wholly owned by us. This portfolio includes four issued U.S. patents, two issued Japanese patents, two issued patents in each of Korea, Hong Kong, Israel and Mexico and one issued patent in each of the following territories: Australia, China, and the European Union. These issued patents cover the composition and certain methods of using tenapanor and are predicted, without extension or adjustment, to expire in December 2029. The portfolio further includes patents covering the use of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus that has issued in U.S., Europe, Japan, China, Australia, Russia and Taiwan and is pending in other countries. These patents are predicted, without extension or adjustment, to expire in April 2034. We have related national patent applications pending in Europe, China, India, Israel and a number of other countries. Any patents issuing from these patent applications are also predicted without extension or adjustment to expire in December 2029.

Additional U.S. and international patent applications are pending covering additional methods of treatment with tenapanor, and composition of matter and methods of using compounds that we believe may be follow on compounds to tenapanor.

Other program patents

We have patent applications pending in the United States and internationally that cover the compositions and methods of using our TGR5 agonists, our FXR agonists and compounds in our RDX013 program.

MANUFACTURING

To date, we have relied upon third-party contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, to manufacture both the active pharmaceutical ingredient and final drug product dosage forms of our potential drug candidates used as clinical trial material. We expect that we will continue to rely upon CMOs for the manufacture of our clinical trial materials and for our commercial product requirements, when and if regulatory approval is received. Our license agreements with KKC, Knight, and Fosun Pharma require us to supply final drug product dosage forms of tenapanor and/or active pharmaceutical ingredient for their use in the development of tenapanor in each of their respective territories, and we are further obligated to continue to supply active pharmaceutical ingredient to support their commercialization of tenapanor in each of their territories. We expect that we will use CMOs to satisfy our supply obligations to our collaboration partners.

GOVERNMENT REGULATION

The FDA and comparable regulatory authorities in state and local jurisdictions and in other countries impose substantial and burdensome requirements upon companies involved in the clinical development, manufacture, marketing and distribution of drugs. These agencies and other federal, state and local entities regulate research and development activities and the testing, manufacture, quality control, safety, effectiveness, labeling, storage, record keeping, approval, advertising and promotion, distribution, post-approval monitoring and reporting, sampling, and export and import of our product candidates.

In the United States, the FDA regulates drug products under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FFDCA, and the FDA's implementing regulations. If we fail to comply with applicable FDA or other requirements at any time during the drug development process, the approval process or after approval, we may become subject to administrative or judicial sanctions. These sanctions could include the FDA's refusal to approve pending applications, license suspension or revocation, withdrawal of an approval, warning or untitled letters, product recalls, product

seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, civil penalties or criminal prosecution. Any FDA enforcement action could have a material adverse effect on us. FDA approval is required before any new unapproved drug or dosage form, including a new use of a previously approved drug, can be marketed in the United States.

The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves:

- completion of extensive preclinical laboratory tests, preclinical animal studies and formulation studies, some performed in accordance with the FDA's current Good Laboratory Practice, or GLP, regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an Investigational New Drug, or IND, application which must become effective before human clinical trials in the United States may begin;
- approval by an independent institutional review board, or IRB, or ethics committee at each clinical trial site before each trial may be initiated;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with Good Clinical Practice, or GCP, regulations to establish the safety and efficacy of the drug candidate for each proposed indication;
- submission to the FDA of a new drug application, or NDA;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the drug is produced to assess compliance with current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, regulations;
- satisfactory completion of a potential review by an FDA advisory committee, if applicable; and
- FDA review and approval of the NDA prior to any commercial marketing, sale or commercial shipment of the drug.

The preclinical and clinical testing and approval process requires substantial time, effort and financial resources, and we cannot be certain that any approvals for our product candidates will be granted on a timely basis, if at all. Nonclinical tests include laboratory evaluation of product chemistry, formulation, stability and toxicity, as well as animal studies to assess the characteristics and potential safety and efficacy of the product. The results of preclinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data and a proposed clinical trial protocol and other information, are submitted as part of an IND to the FDA. Some preclinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA, within the 30-day time period, raises concerns or questions relating to the IND and places the clinical trial on a clinical hold, including concerns that human research subjects will be exposed to unreasonable health risks. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. A separate submission to an existing IND must also be made for each successive clinical trial conducted during product development.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the clinical trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the effectiveness criteria to be used. Each protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND.

An independent IRB or ethics committee for each medical center proposing to conduct a clinical trial must also review and approve a plan for any clinical trial before it can begin at that center and the IRB must monitor the clinical trial until it is completed. The FDA, the IRB, or the sponsor may suspend or discontinue a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Clinical testing also must satisfy extensive GCP requirements, including the requirements for informed consent.

All clinical research performed in the United States in support of an NDA must be authorized in advance by the FDA under the IND regulations and procedures described above. However, a sponsor who wishes to conduct a clinical trial outside the United States may, but need not, obtain FDA authorization to conduct the clinical trial under an IND. If a foreign clinical trial is not conducted under an IND, the sponsor may submit data from the clinical trial to the FDA in support of an NDA so long as the clinical trial is conducted in compliance with GCP and if the FDA is able to validate the data from the study through an onsite inspection, if necessary. GCP includes review and approval by an independent ethics committee, such as an IRB, and obtaining and documenting the freely given informed consent of the subject before study initiation. If the applicant seeks approval of an NDA solely on the basis of foreign data, the FDA will only accept such data if they are applicable to the U.S. population and U.S. medical practice, the studies have been performed by clinical investigators of recognized competence, and the data may be considered valid without the need for an on-site inspection by the FDA, or if the FDA considers such an inspection to be necessary, the FDA is able to validate the data through an on-site inspection or through other appropriate means.

Clinical trials

The clinical investigation of a new drug is typically conducted in three or four phases, which may overlap or be combined, and generally proceed as follows.

- *Phase 1*: Clinical trials are initially conducted in a limited population of subjects to test the drug candidate for safety, dose tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution and excretion in healthy humans or, on occasion, in patients with severe problems or life-threatening diseases to gain an early indication of its effectiveness.

- *Phase 2*: Clinical trials are generally conducted in a limited patient population to evaluate dosage tolerance and appropriate dosage, identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, and evaluate preliminarily the efficacy of the drug for specific targeted indications in patients with the disease or condition under study.

- *Phase 3*: Clinical trials are typically conducted when Phase 2 clinical trials demonstrate that a dose range of the product candidate is effective and has an acceptable safety profile. Phase 3 clinical trials are commonly referred to as “pivotal” studies, which typically denotes a study which presents the data that the FDA or other relevant regulatory agency will use to determine whether or not to approve a drug. Phase 3 clinical trials are generally undertaken with large numbers of patients, such as groups of several hundred to several thousand, to further evaluate dosage, to provide substantial evidence of clinical efficacy and to further test for safety in an expanded and diverse patient population at multiple, geographically-dispersed clinical trial sites.

- *Phase 4*: In some cases, the FDA may condition approval of an NDA for a product candidate on the sponsor’s agreement to conduct additional clinical trials after NDA approval. In other cases, a sponsor may voluntarily conduct additional clinical trials post approval to gain more information about the drug. Such post approval trials are typically referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials.

Concurrent with clinical trials, companies usually complete additional nonclinical studies and must also develop additional information about the chemistry and physical characteristics of the drug and finalize a process for manufacturing the drug in commercial quantities in accordance with GMP requirements. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the drug candidate and, among other things, the manufacturer must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality and purity of the final drug product. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested, and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the drug candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

The FDA, the IRB or the clinical trial sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk.

Additionally, some clinical trials are overseen by an independent group of qualified experts organized by the clinical trial sponsor, known as a data safety monitoring board or committee. This group provides authorization for whether or not a trial may move forward at designated check points based on access to certain data from the study. We may also suspend or terminate a clinical trial based on evolving business objectives and/or competitive climate.

New drug applications

The results of preclinical studies and of the clinical trials, together with other detailed information, including extensive manufacturing information and information on the composition of the drug, are submitted to the FDA in the form of an NDA requesting approval to market the drug for one or more specified indications. The FDA reviews an NDA to determine, among other things, whether a drug is safe and effective for its intended use.

Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, the FDA has a goal of responding to standard review NDAs of new molecular entities within ten months after the 60-day filing review period, or six months after the 60-day filing review period for priority review NDAs, but this timeframe is often extended by FDA requests for additional information or clarification. The FDA may refer the application to an advisory committee for review, evaluation and recommendation as to whether the application should be approved. The FDA is not bound by the recommendation of an advisory committee, but it generally follows such recommendations.

Before approving an application, the FDA will inspect the facility or the facilities at which the finished drug product, and sometimes the active pharmaceutical ingredient, or API, is manufactured, and will not approve the drug unless cGMP compliance is satisfactory. The FDA may also inspect the sites at which the clinical trials were conducted to assess their compliance, and will not approve the drug unless compliance with cGCP requirements is satisfactory.

After the FDA evaluates the NDA and conducts inspections of manufacturing facilities where the drug product and/or its API will be produced, it may issue an approval letter or a Complete Response Letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the drug with specific prescribing information for specific indications. A Complete Response Letter indicates that the review cycle of the application is complete and the application is not ready for approval. A Complete Response Letter may require additional clinical data and/or an additional pivotal Phase 3 clinical trial(s), and/or other significant, expensive and time-consuming requirements related to clinical trials, preclinical studies or manufacturing. Even if such additional information is submitted, the FDA may ultimately decide that the NDA does not satisfy the criteria for approval. The FDA could also approve the NDA with a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, to mitigate risks, which could include medication guides, physician communication plans, or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries and other risk minimization tools. The FDA also may condition approval on, among other things, changes to proposed labeling, development of adequate controls and specifications, or a commitment to conduct one or more post-market studies or clinical trials. Such post-market testing may include Phase 4 clinical trials and surveillance to further assess and monitor the product’s safety and effectiveness after commercialization. The FDA has the authority to prevent or limit further marketing of a drug based on the results of these post-marketing programs. Once the FDA approves an NDA, or supplement thereto, the FDA may withdraw the approval if ongoing regulatory requirements are not met or if safety problems are identified after the drug reaches the market.

Drugs may be marketed only for the FDA approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling. Further, if there are any modifications to the drug, including changes in indications, labeling, or manufacturing processes or facilities, the applicant may be required to submit and obtain FDA approval of a new NDA or NDA supplement, which may require the applicant to develop additional data or conduct additional preclinical studies and clinical trials.

The testing and approval processes require substantial time, effort and financial resources, and each may take several years to complete. The FDA may not grant approval on a timely basis, or at all. Even if we believe a clinical trial has demonstrated safety and efficacy of one of our drug candidates for the proposed indication, the results may not be satisfactory to the FDA. Nonclinical and clinical data may be interpreted by the FDA in different ways, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. We may encounter difficulties or unanticipated costs in our efforts to secure necessary governmental approvals which could delay or preclude us from marketing drugs. The FDA may limit the

indications for use or place other conditions on any approvals that could restrict the commercial application of the drugs. After approval, certain changes to the approved drug, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes, or additional labeling claims are subject to further FDA review and approval. Depending on the nature of the change proposed, an NDA supplement must be filed and approved before the change may be implemented.

Other regulatory requirements

Any drugs manufactured or distributed by us or our collaboration partners pursuant to FDA approvals would be subject to continuing regulation by the FDA, including recordkeeping requirements and reporting of adverse experiences associated with the drug. Drug manufacturers and their subcontractors are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic announced and unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with ongoing regulatory requirements, including cGMP, which impose certain procedural and documentation requirements upon us and our third-party manufacturers. Failure to comply with the statutory and regulatory requirements can subject a manufacturer to possible legal or regulatory action, such as warning or untitled letters, suspension of manufacturing, seizure of product, injunctive action or possible civil penalties. We cannot be certain that we or our present or future third-party manufacturers or suppliers will be able to comply with the cGMP regulations and other ongoing FDA regulatory requirements. If we or our present or future third-party manufacturers or suppliers are not able to comply with these requirements, the FDA may, among other things, halt our clinical trials, require us to recall a drug from distribution or withdraw approval of the NDA for that drug.

The FDA closely regulates the post-approval marketing and promotion of drugs, including standards and regulations for direct-to-consumer advertising, off-label promotion, industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities and promotional activities involving the Internet. A company can make only those claims relating to safety and efficacy that are approved by the FDA. Failure to comply with these requirements can result in, among other things, adverse publicity, warning or untitled letters, corrective advertising and potential civil and criminal penalties. Physicians may prescribe legally available drugs for uses that are not described in the product's labeling and that differ from those tested by us and approved by the FDA. Such off-label uses are common across medical specialties. Physicians may believe that such off-label uses are the best treatment for many patients in varied circumstances. The FDA does not regulate the behavior of physicians in their choice of treatments. The FDA does, however, impose stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use.

Hatch-Waxman Act

Section 505 of the FFDCA describes three types of marketing applications that may be submitted to the FDA to request marketing authorization for a new drug. A Section 505(b)(1) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy. A 505(b)(2) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy but where at least some of the information required for approval comes from investigations that were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference or use from the person by or for whom the investigations were conducted. This regulatory pathway enables the applicant to rely, in part, on the FDA's prior findings of safety and efficacy for an existing product, or published literature, in support of its application. Section 505(j) establishes an abbreviated approval process for a generic version of approved drug products through the submission of an Abbreviated New Drug Application, or ANDA. An ANDA provides for marketing of a generic drug product that has the same active ingredients, dosage form, strength, route of administration, labeling, performance characteristics and intended use, among other things, to a previously approved product. ANDAs are termed "abbreviated" because they are generally not required to include nonclinical (animal) and clinical (human) data to establish safety and efficacy. Instead, generic applicants must scientifically demonstrate that their product is bioequivalent to, or performs in the same manner as, the innovator drug through in vitro, in vivo, or other testing. The generic version must deliver the same amount of active ingredients into a subject's bloodstream in the same amount of time as the innovator drug and can often be substituted by pharmacists under prescriptions written for the reference listed drug. In seeking approval for a drug through an NDA, applicants are required to list with the FDA each patent with claims that cover the applicant's drug or a method of using the drug. Upon approval of a drug, each of the patents listed in the application for the drug is then published in the FDA's Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations, commonly known as the Orange Book. Drugs listed in the Orange Book can, in turn, be cited by potential competitors in support of approval of an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA.

Upon submission of an ANDA or a 505(b)(2) NDA, an applicant must certify to the FDA that (1) no patent information on the drug product that is the subject of the application has been submitted to the FDA; (2) such patent has expired; (3) the date on which such patent expires; or (4) such patent is invalid or will not be infringed upon by the manufacture, use or sale of the drug product for which the application is submitted. Generally, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA cannot be approved until all listed patents have expired, except where the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant challenges a listed patent through the last type of certification, also known as a paragraph IV certification. If the applicant does not challenge the listed patents or indicates that it is not seeking approval of a patented method of use, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA application will not be approved until all of the listed patents claiming the referenced product have expired.

If the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant has provided a Paragraph IV certification to the FDA, the applicant must send notice of the Paragraph IV certification to the NDA and patent holders once the application has been accepted for filing by the FDA. The NDA and patent holders may then initiate a patent infringement lawsuit in response to the notice of the paragraph IV certification. If the paragraph IV certification is challenged by an NDA holder or the patent owner(s) asserts a patent challenge to the paragraph IV certification, the FDA may not approve that application until the earlier of 30 months from the receipt of the notice of the paragraph IV certification, the expiration of the patent, when the infringement case concerning each such patent was favorably decided in the applicant's favor or settled, or such shorter or longer period as may be ordered by a court. This prohibition is generally referred to as the 30-month stay. In instances where an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant files a paragraph IV certification, the NDA holder or patent owner(s) regularly take action to trigger the 30-month stay, recognizing that the related patent litigation may take many months or years to resolve. Thus, approval of an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA could be delayed for a significant period of time depending on the patent certification the applicant makes and the reference drug sponsor's decision to initiate patent litigation.

The Hatch-Waxman Act establishes periods of regulatory exclusivity for certain approved drug products, during which the FDA cannot approve (or in some cases accept) an ANDA or 505(b)(2) application that relies on the branded reference drug. For example, the holder of an NDA, including a 505(b)(2) NDA, may obtain five years of exclusivity upon approval of a new drug containing new chemical entities, or NCEs, that have not been previously approved by the FDA. A drug is a new chemical entity if the FDA has not previously approved any other new drug containing the same active moiety, which is the molecule or ion responsible for the therapeutic activity of the drug substance. During the exclusivity period, the FDA may not accept for review an ANDA or a 505(b)(2) NDA submitted by another company that contains the previously approved active moiety. However, an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA may be submitted after four years if it contains a certification of patent invalidity or non-infringement.

The Hatch-Waxman Act also provides three years of marketing exclusivity to the holder of an NDA (including a 505(b)(2) NDA) for a particular condition of approval, or change to a marketed product, such as a new formulation for a previously approved product, if one or more new clinical studies (other than bioavailability or bioequivalence studies) was essential to the approval of the application and was conducted/sponsored by the applicant. This three-year exclusivity period protects against FDA approval of ANDAs and 505(b)(2) NDAs for the condition of the new drug's approval. As a general matter, the three-year exclusivity does not prohibit the FDA from approving ANDAs or 505(b)(2) NDAs for generic versions of the original, unmodified drug product. Five-year and three-year exclusivity will not delay the submission or approval of a full NDA; however, an applicant submitting a full NDA would be required to conduct or obtain a right of reference to all of the preclinical studies and adequate and well-controlled clinical trials necessary to demonstrate safety and efficacy.

Fraud and abuse laws

In the United States, the research, manufacturing, distribution, sale and promotion of drug products and medical devices are potentially subject to regulation by various federal, state and local authorities in addition to the FDA, including the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, other divisions of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (e.g., the Office of Inspector General), the U.S. Department of Justice, state Attorneys General, and other state and local government agencies. These laws include but are not limited to, the Anti-Kickback Statute, the federal False Claims Act, the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, and other state and federal laws and regulations.

The Anti-Kickback Statute makes it illegal for any person, including a prescription drug manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf) to knowingly and willfully solicit, receive, offer, or pay any remuneration that is intended to induce the referral of business, including the purchase, order, or prescription of a particular drug, for which payment may be made under a federal healthcare program, such as Medicare or Medicaid. Violations of this law are punishable by up to five years in prison, criminal fines, administrative civil money penalties, and exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs. In addition, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. Moreover, the Affordable Care Act provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act.

The federal False Claims Act prohibits anyone from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, for payment to federal programs (including Medicare and Medicaid) claims for items or services, including drugs, that are false or fraudulent, claims for items or services not provided as claimed, or claims for medically unnecessary items or services. Although we would not submit claims directly to payors, manufacturers can be held liable under these laws if they are deemed to "cause" the submission of false or fraudulent claims by, for example, providing inaccurate billing or coding information to customers or promoting a product off-label. In addition, our future activities relating to the reporting of wholesaler or estimated retail prices for our products, the reporting of prices used to calculate Medicaid rebate information and other information affecting federal, state, and third-party reimbursement for our products, and the sale and marketing of our products, are subject to scrutiny under this law. For example, pharmaceutical companies have been prosecuted under the federal False Claims Act in connection with their off-label promotion of drugs. Penalties for a False Claims Act violation include three times the actual damages sustained by the government, plus mandatory civil penalties of between $11,181 and $22,363 for each separate false claim, the potential for exclusion from participation in federal healthcare programs, and, although the federal False Claims Act is a civil statute, conduct that results in a False Claims Act violation may also implicate various federal criminal statutes. If the government were to allege that we were, or convict us of, violating these false claims laws, we could be subject to a substantial fine and may suffer a decline in our stock price. In addition, private individuals have the ability to bring actions under the federal False Claims Act and certain states have enacted laws modeled after the federal False Claims Act.

In addition to the laws described above, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, collectively known as the Affordable Care Act, also imposed new reporting requirements on drug manufacturers for payments made to physicians and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Failure to submit required information may result in civil monetary penalties of up to an aggregate of $165,786 per year (or up to an aggregate of $1.105 million per year for "knowing failures"), for all payments, transfers of value or ownership or investment interests that are not timely, accurately and completely reported in an annual submission. Manufacturers must submit reports by the 90th day of each subsequent calendar year.

Many states have also adopted laws similar to the federal laws discussed above. Some of these state prohibitions apply to the referral of patients for healthcare services reimbursed by any insurer, not just federal healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. There has also been a recent trend of increased regulation of payments made to physicians and other healthcare providers. Certain states mandate implementation of compliance programs, impose restrictions on drug manufacturers' marketing practices and/or require the tracking and reporting of pricing and marketing information as well as gifts, compensation and other remuneration to physicians. Many of these laws contain ambiguities as to what is required to comply with such laws, which may affect our sales, marketing, and other promotional activities by imposing administrative and compliance burdens on us. In addition, given the lack of clarity with respect to these laws and their implementation, our reporting actions could be subject to the penalty provisions of the pertinent state and perhaps federal, authorities.

Because we intend to commercialize products that could be reimbursed under a federal healthcare program and other governmental healthcare programs, we plan to develop a comprehensive compliance program that establishes internal controls to facilitate adherence to the rules and program requirements to which we will or may become subject. Although compliance programs can mitigate the risk of investigation and prosecution for violations of these laws, the risks cannot be entirely eliminated. Due to the breadth of these laws, the absence of guidance in the form of regulations or court decisions, and the potential for additional legal or regulatory change in this area, it is possible that our future

sales and marketing practices and/or our future relationships with physicians and other healthcare providers might be challenged under such laws. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business.

Third-party coverage and reimbursement

Sales of pharmaceutical products depend in significant part on the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement by third-party payors, such as state and federal governments, including Medicare and Medicaid, and commercial managed care providers. In the United States, no uniform policy of coverage and reimbursement for drug products exists among third-party payors. Accordingly, decisions regarding the extent of coverage and amount of reimbursement to be provided for our product candidates, if approved, will be made on a payor by payor basis. As a result, the coverage determination process is often a time-consuming and costly process that will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our product candidates to each payor separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be obtained. Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific drug products on an approved list, or formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved drugs for a particular indication. A decision by a third-party payor not to cover our product candidates could reduce physician utilization of our products once approved and have a material adverse effect on our future sales, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, a payor's decision to provide coverage for a drug product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

In addition, in July 2010, CMS released its final rule to implement a bundled prospective payment system for the treatment of CKD patients on dialysis as required by the Medicare Improvements for Patients and Providers Act, or MIPPA. The bundled payment includes all renal dialysis services furnished for outpatient maintenance dialysis, including ESRD-related drugs and biologicals. The final rule delayed the inclusion of oral medications without intravenous equivalents in the bundled payment until January 1, 2014 and in April 2014, due to subsequent legislative amendments, CMS provided that such inclusion will remain delayed until January 1, 2025. Unless additional Congressional action is taken, beginning in 2025 ESRD-related drugs will be included in the bundle and separate Medicare reimbursement will no longer be available for such drugs, as it is today under Medicare Part D. While it is too early to project the full impact that bundling may have on drugs for the control of serum phosphorus, the impact could potentially cause dramatic price reductions for tenapanor, if approved.

Healthcare reform

In March 2010, Congress passed, and President Obama signed into law, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, a healthcare reform measure, or the Affordable Care Act. The Affordable Care Act substantially changes the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers, and significantly impacts the pharmaceutical industry.

The Affordable Care Act contains a number of provisions, including those governing enrollment in federal healthcare programs, reimbursement changes and fraud and abuse measures, which have impacted existing government healthcare programs and have resulted in the development of new programs, including Medicare payment for performance initiatives and improvements to the physician quality reporting system and feedback program.

Additionally, the Affordable Care Act:

- increases the minimum level of Medicaid rebates payable by manufacturers of brand-name drugs from 15.1% to 23.1%;
- requires collection of rebates for drugs paid by Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expands eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for

certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing a manufacturer's Medicaid rebate liability;

- expands access to commercial health insurance coverage through new state-based health insurance marketplaces, or exchanges;

- requires manufacturers to participate in a coverage gap discount program, under which they must agree to offer 50 percent point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D, beginning January 2011; and

- imposes a non-deductible annual fee on pharmaceutical manufacturers or importers who sell "branded prescription drugs" to specified federal government programs.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act. We expect that the new presidential administration and U.S. Congress will likely continue to seek to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all or certain provisions of, the Affordable Care Act. There is still uncertainty with respect to the impact President Trump's administration and the U.S. Congress may have, if any, and any changes will likely take time to unfold, and could have an impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the Affordable Care Act.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. For example, in August 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011, among other things, included aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2 percent per fiscal year, which went into effect on April 1, 2013, and, due to subsequent legislative amendments, will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. Additionally, individual states have also become increasingly active in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access, and to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. Recently, there has also been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products. These new laws and the regulations and policies implementing them, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may have a material adverse effect on our industry generally and on our ability to successfully develop and commercialize our products.

Other regulations

We are also subject to numerous federal, state and local laws relating to such matters as safe working conditions, manufacturing practices, environmental protection, fire hazard control, and disposal of hazardous or potentially hazardous substances. We may incur significant costs to comply with such laws and regulations now or in the future.

EMPLOYEES

As of December 31, 2019, we had a total of 88 employees, all of which were full-time employees, including a total of 14 employees with Ph.D. degrees. Within our workforce, 63 employees are engaged in research and development and the remaining 25 in general management and administration, including finance, legal, and market development. None of our employees are represented by labor unions or covered by collective bargaining agreements. We believe that we maintain good relations with our employees.

CORPORATE INFORMATION

We were incorporated in Delaware on October 17, 2007, under the name Nteryx and changed our name to Ardelyx, Inc. in June 2008. We operate in only one business segment, which is the research and development of biopharmaceutical products. Our principal offices are located at 34175 Ardenwood Blvd., Fremont, CA 94555, and our telephone number is (510) 745-1700. Our website address is www.ardelyx.com.

We file electronically with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, our annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and current reports on Form 8-K pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. We make available on our website at www.ardelyx.com, free of charge, copies of these reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. The SEC maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers that file electronically with the SEC. The address of that website is www.sec.gov.

ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

Our business involves significant risks, some of which are described below. You should carefully consider these risks, as well as other information in this Annual Report on Form 10-K, including our financial statements and the related notes and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." The occurrence of any of the events or developments described below could harm our business, financial condition, results of operations, cash flows, the trading price of our common stock and our growth prospects. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial may also impair our business operations.

Risks Related to Our Limited Operating History, Financial Condition and Capital Requirements

We have a limited operating history, have incurred significant losses since our inception and we will incur losses in the future, which makes it difficult to assess our future viability.

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Biopharmaceutical product development is a highly speculative undertaking and involves a substantial degree of risk. To date, we have focused substantially all of our efforts on our research and development activities, including developing tenapanor and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. To date, we have not commercialized any products or generated any revenue from the sale of products.

We are not profitable and have incurred losses in each year since our inception in October 2007, and we do not know whether or when we will become profitable. We have only a limited operating history upon which to evaluate our business and prospects. We continue to incur significant research, development and other expenses related to our ongoing operations. As of December 31, 2019, we had an accumulated deficit of $460.5 million.

We expect to continue incur substantial operating losses for the foreseeable future as we prepare for the potential commercialization of, and incur manufacturing and development costs for, tenapanor, including costs associated with preparing the new drug application, or NDA, for submission to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, to request marketing authorization for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, commercializing tenapanor for that indication, and continuing our discovery and research activities.

Our prior losses, combined with expected future losses, have had and will continue to have an adverse effect on our stockholders' equity and working capital. Further, the net losses we incur may fluctuate significantly from quarter-to-quarter and year-to-year, such that a period-to-period comparison of our results of operations may not be a good indication of our future performance.

We have substantial net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards for Federal and California income tax purposes. Such net operating losses and tax credits carryforwards may be reduced as a result of certain intercompany restructuring transactions. In addition, the future utilization of such net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards and credits will be subject to limitations, pursuant to Internal Revenue Code Sections 382 and 383, as a result of ownership changes that have occurred previously and additional limitations may be applicable as a result of ownership changes that could occur in the future.

We have never generated any revenue from product sales and may never be profitable.

We received FDA approval for our NDA for tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C in September 2019. However, we do not currently expect to commercialize tenapanor for IBS-C ourselves in the United States, and have not entered into a collaboration partnership for such commercialization. We have no other products approved for sale and have never generated any revenue from product sales. Our ability to generate revenue from product sales and achieve profitability depends on our ability to obtain the regulatory and marketing approvals necessary to commercialize tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, either on our own or with one or more collaboration partners, and on our ability to successfully identify a collaboration partner for the commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C. There can be no assurances that we will generate product revenue from sales of tenapanor, either on our own,

or with a collaboration partner. Our ability to generate future revenue from product sales or pursuant to milestone payments depends heavily on many factors, including but not limited to:

- obtaining regulatory approvals for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, either on our own or with one or more collaboration partners;
- our ability to identify a collaboration partner and negotiate acceptable terms for a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States;
- our ability to successfully commercialize tenapanor, which has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of IBS-C, and/or tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, if approved, either on our own or with one or more collaboration partners;
- developing a sustainable and scalable manufacturing process for tenapanor and establishing and maintaining supply and manufacturing relationships with third parties that can provide an adequate (in amount and quality) supply of product to support the market demand for tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C, and/or, if approved, tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis;
- obtaining market acceptance of tenapanor as a viable treatment option for the indications for which it is approved and commercialized;
- addressing any competing technological and market developments;
- identifying, assessing, acquiring, in-licensing and/or developing new product candidates;
- negotiating favorable terms in any collaboration partnership, licensing or other arrangements into which we may enter;
- maintaining, protecting and expanding our portfolio of intellectual property rights, including patents, trade secrets, and know-how, and our ability to develop, manufacture and commercialize our product candidates and products without infringing intellectual property rights of others; and
- attracting, hiring, and retaining qualified personnel.

In cases where we are successful in obtaining regulatory approvals to market tenapanor for one or more indications, our revenue will be dependent, in part, upon the size of the markets in the territories for which regulatory approval is granted, our ability to identify a collaboration partner and negotiate acceptable terms for a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor for the IBS-C indication in the United States, the accepted price for the product, the ability to get reimbursement at any price and whether we are commercializing the product or the product is being commercialized by a collaboration partner, and in such case, whether we have royalty and/or co-promotion rights for that territory, and whether any royalty we have a right to receive from a collaboration partner is in excess of the royalty we owe AstraZeneca as a result of the termination of our License Agreement with AstraZeneca in 2015. See NOTE 13, COLLABORATION AND LICENSING AGREEMENTS, in the notes to our financial statements, included in Part II, Item 8, of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, for details on our obligations to AstraZeneca. While there is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products in general in the United States, there is additional uncertainty related to insurance coverage and reimbursement for drugs, like tenapanor, which, if approved, will be marketed for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. If we are successful in obtaining regulatory approval to market tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, our ability to generate and sustain future revenues from sales of tenapanor for such indication, may be dependent upon whether tenapanor, along with other oral only drugs for CKD patients on dialysis, are bundled into the ESRD Prospective Payment System beginning in 2025, and the manner in which such introduction into the ESRD Prospective Payment System may occur. See "***Third-party payor coverage and reimbursement status of newly-approved products is uncertain. Failure to***

obtain or maintain adequate coverage and reimbursement for our products, if approved, could limit our ability to market those products and decrease our ability to generate revenue" below**.** Additionally, if the number of patients suitable for tenapanor is not as significant as we estimate, the indication approved by regulatory authorities is narrower than we expect, coverage and reimbursement for tenapanor are not available in the manner and to the extent which we expect, or the reasonably accepted population for treatment is narrowed by competition, physician choice or treatment guidelines, we may not generate significant revenue from the sale of tenapanor, even if approved. Even if we achieve profitability in the future, we may not be able to sustain profitability in subsequent periods. Our failure to generate revenue from product sales would likely depress our market value and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, discover or develop other product candidates or continue our operations. A decline in the value of our common stock could cause our stockholders to lose all or part of their investment.

Our operating activities may be restricted as a result of covenants related to the indebtedness under our loan and security agreement and we may be required to repay the outstanding indebtedness in an event of default, which could have a materially adverse effect on our business.

On May 16, 2018, we entered into a loan and security agreement with Solar Capital, Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank, or collectively the Lenders, pursuant to which the Lenders agreed to provide us a $50.0 million term loan facility with a maturity date of November 1, 2022. The full amount of the loan was funded on May 16, 2018. Until we have repaid such indebtedness, the loan and security agreement subjects us to various customary covenants, including requirements as to financial reporting and insurance and restrictions on our ability to dispose of our business or property, to change our line of business, to liquidate or dissolve, to enter into any change in control transaction, to merge or consolidate with any other entity or to acquire all or substantially all the capital stock or property of another entity, to incur additional indebtedness, to incur liens on our property, to pay any dividends or other distributions on capital stock other than dividends payable solely in capital stock, to redeem capital stock, to enter into licensing agreements, to engage in transactions with affiliates, and to encumber our intellectual property. Our business may be adversely affected by these restrictions on our ability to operate our business.

We are permitted to make interest only payments on the loan facility through December 1, 2020. However, we may be required to repay the outstanding indebtedness under the loan facility if an event of default occurs under the loan and security agreement. An event of default will occur if, among other things, we fail to make payments under the loan and security agreement; we breach any of our covenants under the loan and security agreement, subject to specified cure periods with respect to certain breaches; the Lenders determine that a material adverse change has occurred; we or our assets become subject to certain legal proceedings, such as bankruptcy proceedings; we are unable to pay our debts as they become due; or we default on contracts with third parties which would permit the Lenders to accelerate the maturity of such indebtedness or that could have a material adverse change on us. We may not have enough available cash or be able to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings to repay such indebtedness at the time any such event of default occurs. In this case, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development or commercialization efforts or grant to others' rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves. The Lenders could also exercise their rights as collateral agent to take possession of and to dispose of the collateral securing the term loans, which collateral includes substantially all of our property (excluding intellectual property, which is subject to a negative pledge). Our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially adversely affected as a result of any of these events.

We will require substantial additional financing to achieve our goals, and the inability to access this necessary capital when needed on acceptable terms, or at all, could force us to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our pre-commercialization efforts for tenapanor and our other product development and platform development activities.

Since our inception, most of our resources have been dedicated to our research and development activities, including developing our clinical product candidate tenapanor and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. We believe that we will continue to expend substantial resources for the foreseeable future, including costs associated with the preparation and submission of the NDA for, and, if approved, the commercialization of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, research and development, conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials for our other programs, obtaining regulatory approvals, developing and maintaining scalable manufacturing processes for our product candidates and sales and marketing. Because the outcome of any clinical trial and/or regulatory approval

process is highly uncertain, we cannot reasonably estimate the actual amounts necessary to successfully complete the development, regulatory approval process and commercialization or co-promotion of any of our product candidates. Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to:

- the preparation and submission of an NDA with the FDA to request marketing authorization for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis;
- our ability to identify a collaboration partner and negotiate acceptable terms for a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor in IBS-C in the United States;
- our ability to successfully commercialize tenapanor, which has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of patients with IBS-C, with one or more collaboration partners; and, our ability to successfully commercialize tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, if approved, either alone or with one or more collaboration partners;
- the manufacturing costs of our product candidates, and the availability of one or more suppliers for our product candidates at reasonable costs, both for clinical and commercial supply;
- the selling and marketing costs associated with tenapanor, including the cost and timing of building our sales and marketing capabilities;
- our ability to maintain our existing collaboration partnerships and to establish additional collaboration partnerships, in-license/out-license, joint ventures or other similar arrangements and the financial terms of such agreements;
- the timing, receipt, and amount of sales of, or royalties on, tenapanor, if any;
- the sales price and the availability of adequate third-party reimbursement for tenapanor, if approved;
- the cash requirements of any future acquisitions or discovery of product candidates;
- the number and scope of preclinical and discovery programs that we decide to pursue or initiate, and any clinical trials we decide to pursue for other product candidates, including RDX013;
- the time and cost necessary to respond to technological and market developments;
- the costs of filing, prosecuting, maintaining, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights, including litigation costs and the outcome of such litigation, including costs of defending any claims of infringement brought by others in connection with the development, manufacture or commercialization of tenapanor or any of our product candidates; and
- the payment of interest and principal related to our loan and security agreement entered into with Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank during May 2018.

Additional funds may not be available when we need them on terms that are acceptable to us, or at all. If adequate funds are not available to us on a timely basis, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our research activities, preclinical and clinical trials for our product candidates and our establishment and maintenance of sales and marketing capabilities or other activities that may be necessary to commercialize tenapanor, either alone or with collaboration partners. Additionally, our inability to access capital on a timely basis and on terms that are acceptable to us may force us to restructure certain aspects of our business or identify and complete one or more strategic collaborations or

other transactions in order to fund the development or commercialization of tenapanor or certain of our product candidates through the use of alternative structures.

Risks Related to Our Business

We are substantially dependent on the success of our lead product candidate, tenapanor, which may not receive regulatory approval for the control of serum phosphorus or be successfully commercialized for IBS-C or hyperphosphatemia.

To date, we have invested a significant amount of our efforts and financial resources in the research and development of tenapanor, which is currently our lead product candidate. The clinical and commercial success of tenapanor will depend on a number of factors, including the following:

- our ability to, in a timely manner and under terms that are acceptable to us, establish a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C in the United States;
- the ability of the third-party manufacturers we contract with to successfully execute and scale up the manufacturing processes for tenapanor, which has not yet been fully demonstrated, and to manufacture supplies of tenapanor and to develop, validate and maintain commercially viable manufacturing processes that are compliant with cGMP requirements;
- whether the FDA requires us to conduct clinical trials in addition to those anticipated prior to approval to market tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, which could delay the commercialization of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis in the U.S;
- whether or not the content of the label approved by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities may materially and adversely impact our ability the ability of our collaboration partners to commercialize the product for the approved indication, or for any other indication;
- whether we will be required to conduct clinical trials in addition to those anticipated to obtain adequate commercial pricing;
- the prevalence and severity of adverse side effects of tenapanor;
- whether tenapanor's safety and efficacy profile is satisfactory to the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities to gain marketing approval for the control of serum phosphorus;
- the timely receipt of necessary marketing approvals from the FDA and foreign regulatory authorities;
- our ability, either alone, or with a collaboration partner, to successfully commercialize tenapanor, if approved for marketing and sale by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities, including educating physicians and patients about the benefits, administration and use of tenapanor;
- achieving and maintaining compliance with all regulatory requirements applicable to tenapanor;
- acceptance of tenapanor as safe, effective and well-tolerated by patients and the medical community;
- our ability, alone or with collaboration partners, to manage the complex pricing and reimbursement negotiations associated with marketing the same product at different doses for separate indications for tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C, and, if approved, for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis;

- the availability, perceived advantages, relative cost, relative safety and relative efficacy of tenapanor compared to alternative and competing treatments;
- obtaining and sustaining an adequate level of coverage and reimbursement for tenapanor by third-party payors;
- enforcing intellectual property rights in and to tenapanor;
- avoiding third-party interference, opposition, derivation or similar proceedings with respect to our patent rights, and avoiding other challenges to our patent rights and patent infringement claims; and
- a continued acceptable safety and tolerability profile of tenapanor following approval.

As tenapanor is a first-in-class drug, there is a higher likelihood that approval may not be attained as compared to a class of drugs with approved products. Although tenapanor met the primary endpoints in all of the three Phase 3 clinical trials evaluating tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, there can be no assurances that we will receive regulatory approval to market tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. Further, it may not be possible or practicable to demonstrate, or if approved, to market tenapanor on the basis of certain of the benefits we believe tenapanor possesses. If the number of patients in the market for tenapanor or the price that the market can bear is not as significant as we estimate, or if we are not able to secure adequate coverage and reimbursement for tenapanor, we may not generate sufficient revenue from sales of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, if approved, or for IBS-C. Additionally, we may not be successful in establishing a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C in the United States in a timely manner and under terms that are acceptable to us. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that tenapanor will ever be successfully commercialized or that we will ever generate income from sales of tenapanor. If we are not successful in completing the NDA submission for, and obtaining approval for, tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, or we are not successful in commercializing tenapanor, or are significantly delayed in doing so, our business will be materially harmed.

Even if we are successful in obtaining regulatory approval for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, and tenapanor is ultimately commercialized for any approved indications, tenapanor may never achieve market acceptance, sufficient third-party coverage or reimbursement, or commercial success, which will depend, in part, upon the degree of acceptance among physicians, patients, patient advocacy groups, health care payors and the medical community.

Even if we are successful in obtaining regulatory approval for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, and tenapanor is ultimately commercialized for any approved indications, tenapanor may not achieve market acceptance among physicians, patients, third-party payors, patient advocacy groups, and the medical community. Market acceptance of tenapanor, in the event that marketing approval is obtained, depends on a number of factors, including:

- with respect to tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States, our ability to obtain a collaboration partner for commercialization and the strength of such collaboration partner’s financial resources and marketing and distribution organizations, as well as the commitment of such collaboration partner’s sales organization to tenapanor;
- the efficacy demonstrated in our clinical trials;
- with respect to tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, whether tenapanor, along with other oral only medications, are included in the bundled prospective payment system for the treatment of ESRD patients, and the manner in which such transition is achieved;
- the prevalence and severity of any side effects and overall safety and tolerability profile of the product;
- the clinical indications for which it is approved;

- advantages over new or traditional or existing therapies, including recently approved therapies or therapies that the physician community anticipate will be approved;
- acceptance by physicians, major operators of clinics and patients of tenapanor as a safe, effective and well-tolerated treatment;
- relative convenience and ease of administration of tenapanor;
- the potential and perceived advantages of tenapanor over current treatment options or alternative treatments, including future alternative treatments;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments and the willingness to pay for tenapanor, if approved, on the part of physicians and patients;
- the availability of alternative products and their ability to meet market demand; and
- the quality of our relationships with patient advocacy groups.

Any failure by us to obtain a collaboration partner for the commercialization of tenapanor in the United States for IBS-C and any failure of tenapanor to achieve market acceptance, sufficient third-party coverage or reimbursement, or commercial success for any approved indications would adversely affect our results of operations.

We currently have no sales organization. If we are unable to establish sales capabilities on our own or through third parties, we may not be able to commercialize tenapanor or any of our other product candidates.

We currently do not have a sales organization. In order to commercialize or co-promote tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C, we currently plan to seek a collaborative relationship with one or more third parties, rather than to build internal marketing, sales, distribution, managerial and other non-technical capabilities for the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C. There can be no assurances that we will be successful in establishing collaborative relationships in a timely manner or on terms that are acceptable to us, and if we fail to do so, we may choose to further delay, or delay indefinitely, the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C.

We currently plan to commercialize tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, if approved, on our own. In order to do so, we will need to establish an appropriate sales organization with technical expertise, as well as supporting distribution capabilities. This will be expensive and time consuming. As a company, we have no prior experience in the marketing, sale and distribution of pharmaceutical products and there are significant risks involved in building and managing a sales organization, including our ability to secure the capital necessary to fund such efforts on acceptable terms, hire, retain, and incentivize qualified individuals, generate sufficient sales leads, provide adequate training to sales and marketing personnel, comply with regulatory requirements applicable to the marketing and sale of drug products and effectively manage a geographically dispersed sales and marketing team.

If we fail or are delayed in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities, we may choose to delay the commercialization tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, if approved, or such commercialization could be adversely impacted.

Third-party payor coverage and reimbursement status of newly-approved products are uncertain. Failure to obtain or maintain adequate coverage and reimbursement for our products, if approved, could limit our ability to market those products and decrease our ability to generate revenue.

The pricing, coverage and reimbursement of our product candidates, if approved, must be adequate to support a commercial infrastructure. The availability and adequacy of coverage and reimbursement by governmental and private payors are essential for most patients to be able to afford treatments such as ours, assuming approval. Sales of our product candidates will depend substantially, both domestically and abroad, on the extent to which the costs of our product candidates will be paid for by health maintenance, managed care, pharmacy benefit, and similar healthcare management

organizations, or reimbursed by government authorities, private health insurers, and other third-party payors. If coverage and reimbursement are not available, or are available only to limited levels, we, or our collaboration partners, may not be able to successfully commercialize our product candidates. Even if coverage is provided, the approved reimbursement amount may not be high enough to allow us to establish or maintain pricing sufficient to realize a return on our investment.

There is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products. In the United States, the principal decisions about coverage and reimbursement for new drugs are typically made by the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, an agency within the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services responsible for administering the Medicare program, as CMS decides whether and to what extent a new drug will be covered and reimbursed under Medicare. Private payors tend to follow the coverage reimbursement policies established by CMS to a substantial degree. It is difficult to predict what CMS will decide with respect to reimbursement for products such as ours.

There is increased uncertainty related to insurance coverage and reimbursement for drugs, like tenapanor, which, if approved, will be marketed for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. In January 2011, CMS implemented a new prospective payment system for dialysis treatment. Under the ESRD prospective payment system, CMS generally makes a single bundled payment to the dialysis facility for each dialysis treatment that covers all items and services routinely required for dialysis treatments furnished to Medicare beneficiaries in Medicare-certified ESRD facilities or at their home, including the cost of certain routine drugs. The inclusion of oral medications without intravenous equivalents in the bundled payment was initially delayed until January 1, 2014 and through several subsequent legislative actions was delayed again January 1, 2025. As a result, absent further legislation on this matter, beginning in 2025, oral-only ESRD-related drugs may be included in the ESRD bundle and separate Medicare payment for these drugs will no longer be available, as is the case today under Medicare Part D. While it is too early to project the full impact that bundling may have on the industry, the impact could potentially cause dramatic price reductions for tenapanor, if approved. We may be unable to sell tenapanor, if approved, to dialysis providers on a profitable basis if third-party payors reduce their current levels of payment, or if our costs of production are higher than levels necessary for an appropriate gross margin after payment of all discounts, rebates and chargebacks.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe, Canada, Japan, China and other countries has and will continue to put pressure on the pricing and usage of our product candidates. In many countries, the prices of medical products are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for medicinal products, but monitor and control company profits. Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for our product candidates. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for our products may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially reasonable revenue and profits.

Moreover, increasing efforts by governmental and third-party payors in the United States and abroad to cap or reduce healthcare costs may cause such organizations to limit both coverage and the level of reimbursement for newly approved products and, as a result, these caps may not cover or provide adequate payment for our product candidates. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of any of our product candidates due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations, and additional legislative changes. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products.

We may not be successful in our efforts to develop our product candidates that are at an early stage of development, or expand our pipeline of product candidates, as a result of numerous factors, which may include the inability to access capital necessary to fund such efforts on acceptable terms.

A key element of our strategy has been focused on the expansion of our pipeline of product candidates utilizing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform and to advance such product candidates through clinical development. Our inability to access capital in a timely manner or on acceptable terms to fund our early stage product candidates may force us to consider certain restructuring activities to enable the funding of those early assets through the use of alternative

structures. In addition, of the large number of drugs in development, only a small percentage of such drugs successfully complete the FDA regulatory approval process and are commercialized. Accordingly, even if we are able to continue to fund our research and early stage development programs, there can be no assurance that any product candidates will reach the clinic or be successfully developed or commercialized.

Research programs to identify product candidates require substantial technical, financial and human resources, whether or not any product candidates are ultimately identified. Although our research and development efforts to date have resulted in several development programs, we may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe, effective and well-tolerated. Our research programs may initially show promise in identifying potential product candidates, and we may select candidates for development, yet we may fail to advance product candidates to clinical development for many reasons, including the following:

- we may be unable to access sufficient capital on acceptable terms to fund the development of all of our assets and as a result we may be forced to delay or terminate the development of certain product candidates, or to consider restructuring efforts to secure alternate funding for those assets;
- the research methodology used and our drug discovery and design platform may not be successful in identifying potential product candidates;
- competitors may develop alternatives that render our product candidates obsolete or less attractive;
- product candidates we develop may nevertheless be covered by third parties' patents or other exclusive rights;
- the market for a product candidate may change during our program so that the continued development of that product candidate is no longer reasonable;
- a product candidate may on further study be shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate it is unlikely to be effective, well-tolerated or otherwise does not meet applicable regulatory or commercial criteria;
- a product candidate may not be capable of being produced in commercial quantities at an acceptable cost, or at all; and
- a product candidate may not be accepted as safe, effective and well-tolerated by patients, the medical community or third-party payors, if applicable.

Even if we are successful in continuing to expand our pipeline, through our own research and development efforts, the potential product candidates that we identify or for which we acquire rights may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of being shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. If we do not successfully develop and commercialize a product pipeline, we may not be able to generate revenue from product sales in future periods or ever achieve profitability.

Clinical drug development involves a lengthy and expensive process with an uncertain outcome and the results of earlier studies and trials may not be predictive of future trial results.

Before obtaining marketing approval from regulatory authorities for the sale of our product candidates, we must conduct extensive clinical studies to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the product candidates in humans. Clinical testing is expensive and can take many years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Failure can occur at any time during the clinical trial process. The results of preclinical and clinical studies of our product candidates may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. An unexpected adverse event profile, or the results of drug-drug interaction studies, may present challenges for the future development and commercialization of a product candidate for a

particular condition despite receipt of positive efficacy data in a clinical study. A number of companies in the pharmaceutical, biopharmaceutical and biotechnology industries have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials for similar indications that we are pursuing due to lack of efficacy or adverse safety profiles, notwithstanding promising results in earlier studies, and we cannot be certain that we will not face similar setbacks.

Furthermore, we could encounter delays if our ongoing clinical trials are suspended or terminated by us, by the IRBs of the institutions in which the trial is being conducted, or by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. Such authorities may suspend or terminate a clinical trial due to a number of factors, including failure to conduct the clinical trial in accordance with regulatory requirements or our clinical protocols, inspection of the clinical trial operations or trial site by the FDA or other regulatory authorities resulting in the imposition of a clinical hold, unforeseen safety issues or adverse side effects, failure to demonstrate a benefit from using a drug, changes in governmental regulations or administrative actions or lack of adequate funding to continue the clinical trial. Any delays in completing a clinical trial will increase costs, slow down our development and regulatory approval process for our potential products and jeopardize the ability to commence product sales and generate revenue from a potential product. Any of these occurrences may significantly harm our business, financial condition and prospects.

Furthermore, even though we have completed our Phase 3 clinical development program for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, the results may not be sufficient to obtain the desired regulatory approval for tenapanor, or if such regulatory approval is obtained, the content of the label approved by regulatory authorities may materially and adversely impact our ability to commercialize the product for the approved indication.

We rely on third parties to conduct some of our nonclinical studies and all of our clinical trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or meet expected deadlines, we may be unable to obtain regulatory approval for additional products or commercialize our product candidates.

We do not have the ability to independently conduct clinical trials and, in some cases, nonclinical studies. We rely on medical institutions, clinical investigators, contract laboratories, and other third parties, such as CROs, to conduct clinical trials on our product candidates. The third parties with whom we contract for execution of the clinical trials play a significant role in the conduct of these trials and the subsequent collection and analysis of data. However, these third parties are not our employees, and except for contractual duties and obligations, we control only certain aspects of their activities and have limited ability to control the amount or timing of resources that they devote to our programs. Although we rely, and will continue to rely, on these third parties to conduct some of our nonclinical studies and all of our clinical trials, we remain responsible for ensuring that each of our studies and clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards and our reliance on third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. We, and these third parties are required to comply with current GLPs for nonclinical studies, and good clinical practices, or GCPs, for clinical studies. GLPs and GCPs are regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, the Competent Authorities of the Member States of the European Economic Area, or EEA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for all of our products in nonclinical and clinical development, respectively. Regulatory authorities enforce GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and trial sites. If we or any of our third-party contractors fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, including GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA, the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. There can be no assurance that upon inspection by a given regulatory authority, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials comply with GCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under cGMP regulations. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Our products or product candidates may cause undesirable side effects or have other properties that could delay our clinical trials, or delay or prevent regulatory approval, limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or result in significant negative consequences following any regulatory approval that is achieved. If we or others identify undesirable side effects caused by any product candidate following receipt of marketing approval, the ability to market such product candidate could be compromised.

Undesirable side effects caused by our products or product candidates could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, result in the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign regulatory authorities or limit the commercial profile of an approved label. To date, patients treated with tenapanor have experienced drug-related side effects including diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, flatulence, abdominal discomfort, abdominal pain, abdominal distention and changes in electrolytes. Despite our receipt of marketing approval for tenapanor for IBS-C and the completion of our Phase 3 clinical program for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus, in the event that future trials conducted by us with tenapanor, or trials we conduct with our other product candidates, reveal an unacceptable severity and prevalence of these or other side effects, such trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of or deny approval of tenapanor for such indication, or any such other product candidate, for any or all targeted indications. Additionally, despite a positive efficacy profile, the prevalence and/or severity of these or other side effects could cause us to cease further development of a product candidate for a particular indication, or entirely. The drug-related side effects could affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition and prospects significantly.

In addition, if we or others identify undesirable side effects caused by one of our products for which we have received regulatory approval, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could occur, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw their approval of the product or seize the product;
- we, or a collaboration partner, may be required to recall the product;
- additional restrictions may be imposed on the marketing of the particular product or the manufacturing processes for the product or any component thereof, including the imposition of a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, which could require creation of a Medication Guide or patient package insert outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients, a communication plan to educate healthcare providers of the drugs' risks, as well as other elements to assure safe use of the product, such as a patient registry and training and certification of prescribers;
- we, or a collaboration partner, may be subject to fines, injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, such as a "black box" warning or a contraindication;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients;
- the product may become less competitive; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of the foregoing events could prevent us, or a collaboration partner, from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of a particular product candidate, if approved, and could result in the loss of significant revenue to us, which would materially and adversely affect our results of operations and business.

We face substantial competition and our competitors may discover, develop or commercialize products faster or more successfully than us.

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are highly competitive, and we face significant competition from companies in the biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other related markets that are researching and marketing products designed to address diseases that we are currently developing products to treat. If approved for marketing by the FDA or other regulatory agencies, tenapanor, as well as our other product candidates, would compete against existing treatments.

For example, tenapanor will, if approved for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, compete directly with phosphate binders for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. The various types of phosphate binders commercialized in the United States include the following:

- Calcium carbonate (many over-the-counter brands including Tums and Caltrate);
- Calcium acetate (several prescription brands including PhosLo and Phoslyra);
- Lanthanum carbonate (Fosrenol);
- Sevelamer hydrochloride (Renagel);
- Sevelamer carbonate (Renvela);
- Sucroferric oxyhydroxide (Velphoro); and
- Ferric citrate (Auryxia).

The hydrochloride form of sevelamer, Renagel, was launched in the United States by Genzyme Corporation in 1998 prior to its acquisition by Sanofi, and the carbonate form, Renvela, was launched in 2008. Generic sevelamer carbonate has been approved in certain jurisdictions in Europe since 2015 and in the U.S. market since June 2017. In addition to the currently marketed phosphate binders, we are aware of at least two other binders in development, including fermagate (Alpharen), an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Opko Health, Inc., and PT20, an iron-based binder in Phase 3 being developed by Shield Therapeutics.

In respect of tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C, numerous treatments exist for constipation and the constipation component of IBS-C, many of which are over-the-counter. These include psyllium husk (such as Metamucil), methylcellulose (such as Citrucel), calcium polycarbophil (such as FiberCon), lactulose (such as Cephulac), polyethylene glycol (such as MiraLax), sennosides (such as Exlax), bisacodyl (such as Ducolax), docusate sodium (such as Colace), magnesium hydroxide (such as Milk of Magnesia), saline enemas (such as Fleet) and sorbitol. These agents are generally inexpensive and work well to temporarily relieve constipation.

We are aware of four prescription products marketed for certain patients with IBS-C, including Linzess (linaclotide), Amitiza (lubiprostone), Trulance (plecanatide) and Zelnorm (tegaserod maleate).

It is possible that our competitors will develop and market drugs or other treatments that are less expensive and more effective than our product candidates, or that will render our product candidates obsolete. It is also possible that our competitors will commercialize competing drugs or treatments before we, or our collaboration partners, can launch any products developed from our product candidates. We also anticipate that we will face increased competition in the future as new companies enter into our target markets.

Many of our competitors have materially greater name recognition and financial, manufacturing, marketing, research and drug development resources than we do. Additional mergers and acquisitions in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries may result in even more resources being concentrated in our competitors. Large pharmaceutical companies in particular have extensive expertise in preclinical and clinical testing and in obtaining regulatory approvals for drugs. In

addition, academic institutions, government agencies, and other public and private organizations conducting research may seek patent protection with respect to potentially competitive products or technologies. These organizations may also establish exclusive collaboration partnerships or licensing relationships with our competitors.

We may experience difficulties in managing our current activities and growth given our level of managerial, operational, financial and other resources.

While we have continued to work to optimize our management composition, personnel and systems to support our current activities for future growth, these resources may not be adequate for this purpose. Our need to effectively execute our business strategy requires that we:

- manage our pre-commercialization activities effectively;
- manage our clinical trials effectively;
- manage our internal research and development efforts effectively while carrying out our contractual obligations to licensors, contractors, collaborators, government agencies and other third parties;
- continue to improve our operational, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures; and
- retain and motivate our remaining employees and potentially identify, recruit, and integrate additional employees.

If we are unable to maintain or expand our managerial, operational, financial and other resources to the extent required to manage our development and pre-commercialization activities, our business will be materially adversely affected.

We rely completely on third parties to manufacture our nonclinical and clinical drug supplies, and we intend to rely on third parties to produce commercial supplies of tenapanor, if tenapanor is ultimately commercialized for any indication. Our business would be harmed if those third parties fail to obtain approval of the FDA or comparable regulatory authorities, fail to provide us with sufficient quantities of drug, or fail to do so at acceptable quality levels or prices.

We do not currently have, nor do we plan to acquire, the infrastructure or capability internally to manufacture tenapanor or any of other our product candidates on a commercial scale, or to manufacture our drug supplies for use in the conduct of our nonclinical and clinical studies. The facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture our drug supply must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after an NDA is submitted to the FDA. Our ability to control the manufacturing process of our product candidates is limited to the contractual requirements and obligations we impose on our contract manufacturer. Although they are contractually required to so do, we are completely dependent on our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with the regulatory requirements, known as cGMPs, for manufacture of both active drug substances and finished drug products.

If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would require a transfer of technology to such alternative facilities and potentially additional capital investment. In addition, the use of alternative manufacturing facilities would require qualification with the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities, all of which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our product candidates, if approved.

We rely on our manufacturers to purchase from third-party suppliers the materials necessary to produce our product candidates for our clinical studies. There are a limited number of suppliers for raw materials and certain processes, such as spray drying, that we use to manufacture our drugs, and there may be a need to identify alternate suppliers to prevent a

possible disruption of the manufacture of the materials necessary to produce our product candidates for our clinical studies, and, if approved, ultimately for commercial sale. We do not have any control over the process or timing of the acquisition of these raw materials or processes by our manufacturers. Although we generally do not begin a clinical study unless we believe we have on hand, or will be able to manufacture, a sufficient supply of a product candidate to complete such study, any significant delay or discontinuity in the supply of a product candidate, or the raw material components thereof, for an ongoing clinical study due to the need to replace a third-party manufacturer could considerably delay completion of our clinical studies, product testing, and potential regulatory approval of our product candidates, which could harm our business and results of operations.

If product liability lawsuits are brought against us, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates.

We face an inherent risk of product liability as a result of the clinical testing of our product candidates and will face an even greater risk if we commercialize any products. For example, we may be sued if any product we develop allegedly causes injury or is found to be otherwise unsuitable during product testing, manufacturing, marketing or sale. Any such product liability claims may include allegations of defects in manufacturing, defects in design, a failure to warn of dangers inherent in the product, negligence, strict liability, and a breach of warranties. Claims could also be asserted under state consumer protection acts. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against product liability claims, we may incur substantial liabilities or be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates. Even successful defense would require significant financial and management resources. Regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for our product candidates;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- costs to defend the related litigation;
- a diversion of management’s time and our resources;
- substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients;
- regulatory investigations, product recalls or withdrawals, or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue; and
- the inability to commercialize or co-promote our product candidates.

Our inability to obtain and maintain sufficient product liability insurance at an acceptable cost and scope of coverage to protect against potential product liability claims could prevent or inhibit the commercialization of any products we develop. We currently carry product liability insurance covering use in our clinical trials in the amount of $10.0 million in the aggregate. Although we maintain such insurance, any claim that may be brought against us could result in a court judgment or settlement in an amount that is not covered, in whole or in part, by our insurance or that is in excess of the limits of our insurance coverage. Our insurance policies also have various exclusions and deductibles, and we may be subject to a product liability claim for which we have no coverage. We will have to pay any amounts awarded by a court or negotiated in a settlement that exceed our coverage limitations or that are not covered by our insurance, and we may not have, or be able to obtain, sufficient capital to pay such amounts. Moreover, in the future, we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or in sufficient amounts to protect us against losses.

If we fail to attract, retain and motivate our executives, senior management and key personnel, our business will suffer.

Recruiting and retaining qualified scientific, clinical, medical, manufacturing, and sales and marketing personnel is critical to our success. We are also highly dependent on our executives, senior management and certain other key employees. The loss of the services of our executives, senior management or other key employee could impede the achievement of our research, development and commercial objectives and seriously harm our ability to successfully implement our business strategy. Furthermore, replacing executives, senior management and other key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited number of individuals in our industry with the breadth of skills and experience required to successfully develop, gain marketing approval of and commercialize products. We may be unable to hire, train or motivate these key personnel on acceptable terms given the intense competition among numerous biopharmaceutical companies for similar personnel, particularly in our geographic regions. Furthermore, we have announced that, Mark Kaufmann, our Chief Financial Officer intends to transition out of the company on or around March 13, 2020. While we are actively recruiting for his replacement, there can be no assurances that we will be able to replace Mr. Kaufmann prior to his planned departure. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high quality personnel, our ability to grow and pursue our business strategy will be limited.

Our proprietary drug discovery and design platform, and, in particular, APECCS, is a new approach to the discovery, design and development of new product candidates and may not result in any products of commercial value. Furthermore, the APECCS aspects of our drug discovery and design platform may have diminished relevance to our efforts focused on the discovery of targets and therapies for the treatment of renal diseases.

We have developed a proprietary drug discovery and design platform to enable the identification, screening, testing, design and development of new product candidates, and have developed APECCS as a component of this of this platform. We have utilized APECCS in the design of our small molecules and to identify new and potentially novel targets in the GI tract. However, there can be no assurance that APECCS will be able to identify new targets in the GI tract or that any of these potential targets or other aspects of our proprietary drug discovery and design platform will yield product candidates that could enter clinical development and, ultimately, be commercially valuable. In addition, as we focus our efforts on the discovery and design of therapies for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases, we may need to further develop our proprietary drug discovery and design platform to enhance its usefulness in the identification, screening, testing, design and development of new product candidates for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases. There can be no assurances that we will be successful in such additional development of our platform or that our platform will yield product candidates for the treatment of renal diseases.

We and our collaborators, CROs and other contractors and consultants depend on information technology systems, and any failure of these systems could harm our business. Security breaches, loss of data, and other disruptions could compromise sensitive information related to our business or prevent us from accessing critical information and expose us to liability, which could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We and our collaborators, CROs, and other contractors and consultants collect and maintain information in digital form that is necessary to conduct our business, and we are increasingly dependent on information technology systems and infrastructure to operate our business. In the ordinary course of our business, we and our collaborators, CROs and other contractors and consultants collect, store and transmit large amounts of confidential information, including intellectual property, proprietary business information and personal information. It is critical that we and our collaborators, CROs and other contractors and consultants do so in a secure manner to maintain the confidentiality and integrity of such confidential information. We have established physical, electronic and organizational measures to safeguard and secure our systems to prevent a data compromise, and rely on commercially available systems, software, tools, and monitoring to provide security for our information technology systems and the processing, transmission and storage of digital information. We have also outsourced elements of our information technology infrastructure, and as a result a number of third-party vendors may or could have access to our confidential information. Our internal information technology systems and infrastructure, and those of our current and any future collaborators, CROs, contractors and consultants and other third parties on which we rely, are vulnerable to damage from computer viruses, malware, natural disasters, terrorism, war, telecommunication and electrical failures, cyber-attacks or cyber-intrusions over the Internet, attachments to emails, persons inside our organization, or persons with access to systems inside our organization.

The risk of a security breach or disruption or data loss, particularly through cyber-attacks or cyber intrusion, including by computer hackers, foreign governments and cyber terrorists, has generally increased as the number, intensity and sophistication of attempted attacks and intrusions from around the world have increased. In addition, the prevalent use of mobile devices that access confidential information increases the risk of data security breaches, which could lead to the loss of confidential information or other intellectual property. The costs to us to mitigate network security problems, bugs, viruses, worms, malicious software programs and security vulnerabilities could be significant, and while we have implemented security measures to protect our data security and information technology systems, our efforts to address these problems may not be successful, and these problems could result in unexpected interruptions, delays, cessation of service and other harm to our business and our competitive position. If such an event were to occur and cause interruptions in our operations, it could result in a material disruption of our product development programs. For example, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or ongoing or planned clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. Moreover, if a computer security breach affects our systems or those of our collaborators, CROs or other contractors, or results in the unauthorized release of personally identifiable information, our reputation could be materially damaged. We would also be exposed to a risk of loss or litigation and potential liability, which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, such a breach may require notification to governmental agencies, the media or individuals pursuant to various federal and state privacy and security laws, if applicable, including the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Clinical Health Act of 2009, or HITECH, and its implementing rules and regulations. Even when HIPAA does not apply, according to the Federal Trade Commission, or the FTC, failing to take appropriate steps to keep consumers' personnel information secure constitutes unfair acts or practices in or affecting commerce in violation of Section 5(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act, or the FTCA, 15 U.S.C § 45(a). The FTC expects a company's data security measures to be reasonable and appropriate in light of the sensitivity and volume of consumer information it holds, the size and complexity of its business, and the cost of available tools to improve security and reduce vulnerabilities. Individually identifiable health information is considered sensitive data that merits stronger safeguards. The FTC's guidance for appropriately securing consumers' personal information is similar to what is required by the HIPAA Security Rule. We may also be subject to state laws requiring notification of affected individuals and state regulators in the event of a breach of personal information, which is a broader class of information than the health information protected by HIPAA. For example, California recently enacted legislation, the California Consumer Privacy Act, or CCPA, which went into effect January 1, 2020. The CCPA, among other things, creates new data privacy obligations for covered companies and provides new privacy rights to California residents, including the right to opt out of certain disclosures of their information. The CCPA also creates a private right of action with statutory damages for certain data breaches, thereby potentially increasing risks associated with a data breach. Although the law includes limited exceptions, including for "protected health information" maintained by a covered entity or business associate, it may regulate or impact our processing of personal information depending on the context.

We incur significant costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will devote substantial time to new compliance initiatives. We may fail to comply with the rules that apply to public companies, including Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, which could result in sanctions or other penalties that would harm our business.

We incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses as a public company, including costs resulting from public company reporting obligations under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, and regulations regarding corporate governance practices. The listing requirements of The Nasdaq Global Market require that we satisfy certain corporate governance requirements relating to director independence, distributing annual and interim reports, stockholder meetings, approvals and voting, soliciting proxies, conflicts of interest and a code of conduct. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to ensure that we comply with all of these requirements. Moreover, the reporting requirements, rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time consuming and costly. Any changes we make to comply with these obligations may not be sufficient to allow us to satisfy our obligations as a public company on a timely basis, or at all. These reporting requirements, rules and regulations, coupled with the increase in potential litigation exposure associated with being a public company, could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to

serve on our board of directors or board committees or to serve as executive officers, or to obtain certain types of insurance, including directors' and officers' insurance, on acceptable terms.

We are subject to Section 404 of The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or Section 404, and the related rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, which generally require our management and independent registered public accounting firm to report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Section 404 requires an annual management assessment of the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Prior to December 31, 2019, we were an emerging growth company as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or JOBS Act, and we took advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that were applicable to public companies that are emerging growth companies, including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404. We ceased to be an emerging growth company after December 31, 2019 and are required to include an opinion from our independent registered public accounting firm on the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting as part of our Annual Report on form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019.

During the course of our review and testing of our internal controls, we may identify deficiencies and be unable to remediate them before we must provide the required reports. Furthermore, if we have a material weakness in our internal controls over financial reporting, we may not detect errors on a timely basis and our financial statements may be materially misstated. We or our independent registered public accounting firm may not be able to conclude on an ongoing basis that we have effective internal control over financial reporting, which could harm our operating results, cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information and cause the trading price of our stock to fall. In addition, as a public company we are required to file accurate and timely quarterly and annual reports with the SEC under the Exchange Act. Any failure to report our financial results on an accurate and timely basis could result in sanctions, lawsuits, delisting of our shares from The Nasdaq Global Market or other adverse consequences that would materially harm our business.

We identified a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting as of June 30, 2019. If we fail to maintain proper and effective internal controls, our ability to produce accurate and timely financial statements could be impaired, which could harm our operating results, our ability to operate our business and investors' views of us and could have a material adverse effect on the price of our common stock.

In accordance with Section 404, management assessed the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting and based on our management's assessment using criteria established in "Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013)" issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission, management had concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was not effective as of June 30, 2019 and remained not effective as of September 30, 2019. Management and our independent registered public accounting firm had identified a control deficiency that constituted a material weakness. The material weakness was due to a failure in the design and implementation of controls over the evaluation of the terms of our clinical trial contracts for inclusion into our clinical financial model which estimates clinical trial expenses. Specifically, we had failed to properly interpret an expense in our clinical trial contracts which resulted in the over accrual of our clinical trial expenses during 2018 and the first quarter of 2019. This material weakness was remediated as of December 31, 2019 and management concluded that our internal controls over financial reporting were effective as of December 31, 2019.

We had developed and implemented a remediation plan for this material weakness which included modifications to the design and implementation of certain internal controls. Although we have remediated this material weakness as of December 31, 2019 as attested by our independent registered public accounting firm, we can give no assurance that an additional material weakness or significant deficiency in our internal controls over financial reporting will not be identified in the future. Our failure to implement and maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting could result in errors in our financial statements that could result in a restatement of our financial statements and cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. If we cannot in the future favorably assess the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting, investor confidence in the reliability of our financial reports may be adversely affected, which could have a material adverse effect on the trading price of our common stock.

We have formed in the past, and may form in the future, collaboration partnerships, joint ventures and/or licensing arrangements, and we may not realize the benefits of such collaborations.

We have current collaboration partnerships for the commercialization of tenapanor in certain foreign countries, and we currently expect to form additional collaboration partnerships, create joint ventures or enter into additional licensing arrangements with third parties in the United States and abroad that we believe will complement or augment our existing business. In particular, we have formed collaboration partnerships with KKC for certain research programs and for commercialization of tenapanor for hyperphosphatemia in Japan; with Fosun Pharma for commercialization of tenapanor for hyperphosphatemia and IBS-C in China and related territories; and in Canada with Knight for commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C and hyperphosphatemia. We face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaboration partners, and the process to identify an appropriate partner and negotiate appropriate terms is time-consuming and complex. Any delays in identifying suitable additional collaboration partners and entering into agreements to develop our product candidates could also delay the commercialization of our product candidates, which may reduce their competitiveness even if they reach the market. Moreover, we may not be successful in our efforts to establish a collaboration partnership for tenapanor for IBS-C commercialization in the United States or for any future product candidates and programs on terms that are acceptable to us, or at all. With respect to tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States, this may be because third parties may not view tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C as having sufficient potential to be successfully commercialized. Additionally, despite third party interest in the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States, we may decide that it is not in the best interests of the Company to enter into such a collaboration partnership. If we are unable to establish a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of IBS-C in the United States under acceptable terms, the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C could be materially and adversely impacted, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects. Additionally, we may not be successful in our efforts to establish collaboration partnerships for our other product candidates because our product candidates and programs may be deemed to be at too early of a stage of development for collaborative effort, our research and development pipeline may be viewed as insufficient, and/or third parties may not view such other product candidates and programs as having sufficient potential for commercialization, including the likelihood of an adequate safety and efficacy profile. There is no guarantee that our current collaboration partnerships or any such arrangements we enter into in the future will be successful, or that any collaboration partner will commit sufficient resources to the development, regulatory approval, and commercialization effort for such products, or that such alliances will result in us achieving revenues that justify such transactions.

We may engage in strategic transactions that could impact our liquidity, increase our expenses and present significant distractions to our management.

We may consider strategic transactions, such as acquisitions of companies, asset purchases, and/or in-licensing of products, product candidates or technologies. In addition, if we are unable to access capital on a timely basis and on terms that are acceptable to us, we may be forced to restructure certain aspects of our business or identify and complete one or more strategic collaborations or other transactions in order to fund the development or commercialization of tenapanor or certain of our product candidates through the use of alternative structures. Additional potential transactions that we may consider include a variety of different business arrangements, including spin-offs, spin outs, collaboration partnerships, joint ventures, restructurings, divestitures, business combinations and investments. Any such transaction may require us to incur non-recurring or other charges, may increase our near- and long-term expenditures and may pose significant integration challenges or disrupt our management or business, which could adversely affect our operations and financial results. For example, these transactions may entail numerous operational and financial risks, including:

- up-front, milestone and royalty payments, equity investments and financial support of new research and development candidates including increase of personnel, all of which may be substantial;
- exposure to unknown liabilities;
- disruption of our business and diversion of our management’s time and attention in order to develop acquired products, product candidates or technologies;

- incurrence of substantial debt or dilutive issuances of equity securities;
- higher-than-expected acquisition and integration costs;
- write-downs of assets or goodwill or impairment charges;
- increased amortization expenses;
- difficulty and cost in combining the operations and personnel of any acquired businesses with our operations and personnel;
- impairment of relationships with key suppliers or customers of any acquired businesses due to changes in management and ownership; and
- inability to retain key employees of any acquired businesses.

Accordingly, although there can be no assurance that we will undertake or successfully complete any transactions of the nature described above, any transactions that we do complete may be subject to the foregoing or other risks and could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

If we seek and obtain approval to commercialize our product candidates outside of the United States, manufacture our product candidates outside of the United States, or otherwise engage in business outside of the United States, a variety of risks associated with international operations could materially adversely affect our business.

We or our collaboration partners may decide to seek marketing approval for certain of our product candidates outside the United States or otherwise engage in business outside the United States, including entering into contractual agreements with third-parties. We currently utilize contract manufacturing organizations located outside of the United States to manufacture our active drug substance for tenapanor. We are subject to additional risks related to entering these international business markets and relationships, including:

- different regulatory requirements for drug approvals in foreign countries;
- differing United States and foreign drug import and export rules;
- reduced protection for intellectual property rights in foreign countries;
- unexpected changes in tariffs, trade barriers and regulatory requirements;
- different reimbursement systems, and different competitive drugs;
- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular foreign economies and markets;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- foreign taxes, including withholding of payroll taxes;
- foreign currency fluctuations, which could result in increased operating expenses and reduced revenues, and other obligations incident to doing business in another country;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;

- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad;
- potential liability resulting from development work conducted by these distributors; and
- business interruptions resulting from geopolitical actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters.

Epidemic diseases, or the perception of their effects, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations or cash flows.

Outbreaks of epidemic, pandemic, or contagious diseases, such as the recent novel coronavirus or, historically, the Ebola virus, Middle East Respiratory Syndrome, Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome, or the H1N1 virus, could disrupt our business. Business disruptions could include disruptions or restrictions on our ability to travel, as well as temporary closures of the facilities of our collaboration partners, suppliers or contract manufacturers. Any disruption of our collaboration partners, suppliers or contract manufacturers could impact our operating results. For example, a supplier of intermediates for our API is located in China and one of our collaboration partners is located in Japan, both of which have recently experienced an outbreak of the novel coronavirus. While at this point, the extent to which the coronavirus outbreak may impact our results is uncertain, it could result in delays in delivery of our intermediates from our supplier, or delays in development activities by our collaboration partners, which may negatively impact our operating results. In addition, a significant outbreak of epidemic, pandemic, or contagious diseases in the human population could result in a widespread health crisis that could adversely affect the economies and financial markets of many countries, resulting in an economic downturn that could affect demand for our current or future products. Any of these events could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, or cash flows.

Our business involves the use of hazardous materials and we and third-parties with whom we contract must comply with environmental laws and regulations, which can be expensive and restrict how we do business.

Our research and development activities involve the controlled storage, use and disposal of hazardous materials, including the components of our product candidates and other hazardous compounds. We and manufacturers and suppliers with whom we may contract are subject to laws and regulations governing the use, manufacture, storage, handling and disposal of these hazardous materials. In some cases, these hazardous materials and various wastes resulting from their use are stored at our and our manufacturers' facilities pending their use and disposal. We cannot eliminate the risk of contamination, which could cause an interruption of our commercialization efforts, research and development efforts and business operations, environmental damage resulting in costly clean-up and liabilities under applicable laws and regulations governing the use, storage, handling and disposal of these materials and specified waste products. We cannot guarantee that the safety procedures utilized by third-party manufacturers and suppliers with whom we may contract will comply with the standards prescribed by laws and regulations or will eliminate the risk of accidental contamination or injury from these materials. In such an event, we may be held liable for any resulting damages and such liability could exceed our resources and state or federal or other applicable authorities may curtail our use of certain materials and/or interrupt our business operations. Furthermore, environmental laws and regulations are complex, change frequently and have tended to become more stringent. We cannot predict the impact of such changes and cannot be certain of our future compliance. We do not currently carry biological or hazardous waste insurance coverage.

We may be adversely affected by the global economic environment.

Our ability to attract and retain collaboration partners or customers, invest in and grow our business and meet our financial obligations depends on our operating and financial performance, which, in turn, is subject to numerous factors, including the prevailing economic conditions and financial, business and other factors beyond our control, such as the rate of unemployment, the number of uninsured persons in the United States, presidential elections, other political influences and inflationary pressures. Our results of operations could be adversely affected by general conditions in the global economy and in the global financial markets. The 2008 global financial crisis caused extreme volatility and disruptions in the capital and credit markets. We cannot anticipate all the ways in which the global economic climate and global financial market conditions could adversely impact our business in the future.

We are exposed to risks associated with reduced profitability and the potential financial instability of our collaboration partners or customers, many of which may be adversely affected by volatile conditions in the financial markets. For example, unemployment and underemployment, and the resultant loss of insurance, may decrease the demand for healthcare services and pharmaceuticals. If fewer patients are seeking medical care because they do not have insurance coverage, our collaboration partners or customers may experience reductions in revenues, profitability and/or cash flow that could lead them to reduce their support of our programs or financing activities. If collaboration partners or customers are not successful in generating sufficient revenue or are precluded from securing financing, they may not be able to pay, or may delay payment of, accounts receivable that are owed to us. In addition, volatility in the financial markets could cause significant fluctuations in the interest rate and currency markets. We currently do not hedge for these risks. The foregoing events, in turn, could adversely affect our financial condition and liquidity. In addition, if economic challenges in the United States result in widespread and prolonged unemployment, either regionally or on a national basis, or if certain provisions of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, collectively known as the Affordable Care Act, are repealed, a substantial number of people may become uninsured or underinsured. To the extent economic challenges result in fewer individuals pursuing or being able to afford our product candidates once commercialized, our business, results of operations, financial condition and cash flows could be adversely affected.

We may be adversely affected by earthquakes or other natural disasters and our business continuity and disaster recovery plans may not adequately protect us from a serious disaster.

Our corporate headquarters and other facilities are located in the San Francisco Bay Area, which in the past has experienced severe earthquakes. We do not carry earthquake insurance. Earthquakes or other natural disasters could severely disrupt our operations, and have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

If a natural disaster, power outage or other event occurred that prevented us from using all or a significant portion of our headquarters, that damaged critical infrastructure, such as our enterprise financial systems or manufacturing resource planning and enterprise quality systems, or that otherwise disrupted operations, it may be difficult or, in certain cases, impossible for us to continue our business for a substantial period of time. The disaster recovery and business continuity plans we have in place currently are limited and are unlikely to prove adequate in the event of a serious disaster or similar event. We may incur substantial expenses as a result of the limited nature of our disaster recovery and business continuity plans, which, particularly when taken together with our lack of earthquake insurance, could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Risks Related to Government Regulation

The regulatory approval processes of the FDA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable. If we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, our business will be substantially harmed.

The research, testing, manufacturing, labeling, approval, selling, import, export, marketing and distribution of drug products are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA and other regulatory authorities in the United States and other countries, which regulations differ from country to country. Neither we nor any of our collaboration partners is permitted to market any drug product in the United States until we receive marketing approval from the FDA. Obtaining regulatory approval of a NDA can be a lengthy, expensive and uncertain process. In addition, failure to comply with FDA and other applicable United States and foreign regulatory requirements may subject us to administrative or judicially imposed sanctions or other actions, including:

- warning or untitled letters;
- civil and criminal penalties;
- injunctions;

- withdrawal of regulatory approval of products;
- product seizure or detention;
- product recalls;
- total or partial suspension of production; and
- refusal to approve pending NDAs or supplements to approved NDAs.

Prior to obtaining approval to commercialize a drug candidate in the United States or abroad, we or our collaboration partners must demonstrate with substantial evidence from well-controlled clinical trials, and to the satisfaction of the FDA or other foreign regulatory agencies, that such drug candidates are safe and effective for their intended uses. The number of nonclinical studies and clinical trials that will be required for FDA approval varies depending on the drug candidate, the disease or condition that the drug candidate is designed to address, and the regulations applicable to any particular drug candidate. Results from nonclinical studies and clinical trials can be interpreted in different ways. Even if we believe the nonclinical or clinical data for our drug candidates are promising, such data may not be sufficient to support approval by the FDA and other regulatory authorities. Administering drug candidates to humans may produce undesirable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and result in the FDA or other regulatory authorities denying approval of a drug candidate for any or all targeted indications.

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable, typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical studies, and depends upon numerous factors. The FDA and comparable foreign authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and we may encounter matters with the FDA or such comparable authorities that requires us to expend additional time and resources and delay or prevent the approval of our product candidates. For example, the FDA may require us to conduct additional studies for a drug product either prior to or post-approval, such as additional drug-drug interaction studies or safety or efficacy studies, or it may object to elements of our clinical development program such as the number of subjects in our current clinical trials from the United States. In addition, approval policies, regulations or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions, which may cause delays in the approval or result in a decision not to approve an application for regulatory approval. Despite the time and expense exerted, failure can occur at any stage.

Applications for our product candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval for many reasons, including but not limited to the following:

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our, or our collaboration partners', clinical studies;
- the population studied in the clinical program may not be sufficiently broad or representative to assure safety in the full population for which approval is sought;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical studies;
- the data collected from clinical studies of our product candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of a NDA or other submission or to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;
- we or our collaboration partners may be unable to demonstrate to the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a product candidate's risk-benefit ratio for its proposed indication is acceptable;

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the manufacturing processes, test procedures and specifications, or facilities of third-party manufacturers responsible for clinical and commercial supplies; and

- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

This lengthy approval process, as well as the unpredictability of the results of clinical studies, may result in our failure and/or that of our collaboration partners to obtain regulatory approval to market any of our product candidates, which would significantly harm our business, results of operations, and prospects. Additionally, if the FDA requires that we conduct additional clinical studies, places limitations in our label, delays approval to market our product candidates or limits the use of our products, our business and results of operations may be harmed.

In addition, even if we were to obtain approval, regulatory authorities may approve any of our product candidates for fewer or more limited indications than we request, may not approve the price we intend to charge for our products, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials, or may approve a product candidate with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of that product candidate. Any of the foregoing scenarios could materially harm the commercial prospects for our product candidates.

Even if we receive regulatory approval for a product candidate, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense. Additionally, any product candidates, if approved, could be subject to labeling and other restrictions and market withdrawal, and we may be subject to penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or experience unanticipated problems with our products.

Even if a drug is approved by the FDA or foreign regulatory authorities, the manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping for the product will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, registration, as well as continued compliance with cGMPs and GCP regulations for any clinical trials that we conduct post-approval. As such, we and our third-party contract manufacturers will be subject to continual review and periodic inspections to assess compliance with regulatory requirements. Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money, and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production, and quality control. Regulatory authorities may also impose significant restrictions on a product's indicated uses or marketing or impose ongoing requirements for potentially costly post-marketing studies. Furthermore, any new legislation addressing drug safety issues could result in delays or increased costs to assure compliance.

We will also be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA, and to comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. Promotional communications with respect to prescription drugs are subject to a variety of legal and regulatory restrictions and must be consistent with the information in the product's approved label. As such, we may not promote our products for indications or uses for which they do not have FDA approval.

Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with our third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in, among other things:

- warning or untitled letters, fines or holds on clinical trials;

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product, withdrawal of the product from the market or voluntary or mandatory product recalls;

- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties;
- suspension or revocation of existing regulatory approvals;
- suspension of any of our ongoing clinical trials;
- refusal to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications submitted by us;
- restrictions on our or our contract manufacturers' operations; or
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products.

Any government investigation of alleged violations of law could require us to expend significant time and resources in response, and could generate negative publicity. Any failure to comply with ongoing regulatory requirements may significantly and adversely affect our ability to commercialize our product candidates. If regulatory sanctions are applied or if regulatory approval is withdrawn, the value of our company and our operating results will be adversely affected.

In addition, the FDA's policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our product candidates. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

We also cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative or executive action, either in the United States or abroad. For example, certain policies of the Trump administration may impact our business and industry. Namely, the Trump administration has taken several executive actions, including the issuance of a number of Executive Orders, that could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, the FDA's ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities such as implementing statutes through rulemaking, issuance of guidance, and review and approval of marketing applications. It is difficult to predict how these Executive Orders will be implemented, and the extent to which they will impact the FDA's ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on FDA's ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted.

We and our contract manufacturers are subject to significant regulation with respect to manufacturing our product candidates. The manufacturing facilities on which we rely may not continue to meet regulatory requirements or may not be able to meet supply demands.

All entities involved in the preparation of product candidates for clinical studies or commercial sale, including our existing contract manufacturers for our product candidates are subject to extensive regulation. Components of a finished therapeutic product approved for commercial sale or used in late-stage clinical studies must be manufactured in accordance with cGMP regulations. These regulations govern manufacturing processes and procedures (including record keeping) and the implementation and operation of quality systems to control and assure the quality of investigational products and products approved for sale. Poor control of production processes can lead to the introduction of contaminants or to inadvertent changes in the properties or stability of our product candidates that may not be detectable in final product testing. We or our contract manufacturers must supply all necessary documentation in support of an NDA or comparable regulatory filing on a timely basis and must adhere to cGMP regulations enforced by the FDA and other regulatory agencies through their facilities inspection programs. The facilities and quality systems of some or all of our third-party contractors must pass a pre-approval inspection for compliance with the applicable regulations as a condition of regulatory approval of our product candidates. In addition, the regulatory authorities may, at any time, audit or inspect a manufacturing facility involved with the preparation of our product candidates or our other potential products or the associated quality systems for compliance with the regulations applicable to the activities being conducted. Although we oversee the contract manufacturers, we cannot control the manufacturing process of, and are completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with the regulatory requirements. If these facilities do not pass a pre-approval plant

inspection, regulatory approval of the products may not be granted or may be substantially delayed until any violations are corrected to the satisfaction of the regulatory authority, if ever. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel.

The regulatory authorities also may, at any time following approval of a product for sale, audit the manufacturing facilities of our third-party contractors. If any such inspection or audit identifies a failure to comply with applicable regulations or if a violation of our product specifications or applicable regulations occurs independent of such an inspection or audit, we or the relevant regulatory authority may require remedial measures that may be costly and/or time consuming for us or a third party to implement, and that may include the temporary or permanent suspension of a clinical study or commercial sales or the temporary or permanent suspension of production or closure of a facility. Any such remedial measures imposed upon us or third parties with whom we contract could materially harm our business.

If we or any of our third-party manufacturers fail to maintain regulatory compliance, the FDA or other applicable regulatory authority can impose regulatory sanctions including, among other things, refusal to approve a pending application for a new drug product, withdrawal of an approval, or suspension of production. As a result, our business, financial condition, and results of operations may be materially harmed.

Additionally, if supply from one approved manufacturer is interrupted, an alternative manufacturer would need to be qualified through an NDA, a supplemental NDA or equivalent foreign regulatory filing, which could result in further delay. The regulatory agencies may also require additional studies if a new manufacturer is relied upon for commercial production. Switching manufacturers may involve substantial costs and is likely to result in a delay in our desired clinical and commercial timelines.

These factors could cause us to incur higher costs and could cause the delay or termination of clinical studies, regulatory submissions, required approvals, or commercialization of our product candidates. Furthermore, if our suppliers fail to meet contractual requirements and we are unable to secure one or more replacement suppliers capable of production at a substantially equivalent cost, our clinical studies may be delayed or we could lose potential revenue.

If we fail to comply or are found to have failed to comply with FDA and other regulations related to the promotion of our products for unapproved uses, we could be subject to criminal penalties, substantial fines or other sanctions and damage awards.

The regulations relating to the promotion of products for unapproved uses are complex and subject to substantial interpretation by the FDA and other government agencies. If tenapanor or our other product candidates receive marketing approval, we and our collaboration partners, if any, will be restricted from marketing the product outside of its approved labeling, also referred to as off-label promotion. However, physicians may nevertheless prescribe an approved product to their patients in a manner that is inconsistent with the approved label, which is an off-label use. We intend to implement compliance and training programs designed to ensure that our sales and marketing practices comply with applicable regulations regarding off-label promotion. Notwithstanding these programs, the FDA or other government agencies may allege or find that our practices constitute prohibited promotion of our product candidates for unapproved uses. We also cannot be sure that our employees will comply with company policies and applicable regulations regarding the promotion of products for unapproved uses.

Over the past several years, a significant number of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies have been the target of inquiries and investigations by various federal and state regulatory, investigative, prosecutorial and administrative entities in connection with the promotion of products for unapproved uses and other sales practices, including the Department of Justice and various U.S. Attorneys' Offices, the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services, the FDA, the Federal Trade Commission and various state Attorneys General offices. These investigations have alleged violations of various federal and state laws and regulations, including claims asserting antitrust violations, violations of the FFDCA, the False Claims Act, the Prescription Drug Marketing Act, anti-kickback laws, and other alleged violations in connection with the promotion of products for unapproved uses, pricing and Medicare and/or Medicaid reimbursement. Many of these investigations originate as "qui tam" actions under the False Claims Act. Under the False Claims Act, any individual can bring a claim on behalf of the government alleging that a person or entity has presented a false claim, or caused a false claim to be submitted, to the government for payment. The person bringing a qui

tam suit is entitled to a share of any recovery or settlement. Qui tam suits, also commonly referred to as "whistleblower suits," are often brought by current or former employees. In a qui tam suit, the government must decide whether to intervene and prosecute the case. If it declines, the individual may pursue the case alone.

If the FDA or any other governmental agency initiates an enforcement action against us or if we are the subject of a qui tam suit and it is determined that we violated prohibitions relating to the promotion of products for unapproved uses, we could be subject to substantial civil or criminal fines or damage awards and other sanctions such as consent decrees and corporate integrity agreements pursuant to which our activities would be subject to ongoing scrutiny and monitoring to ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Any such fines, awards or other sanctions would have an adverse effect on our revenue, business, financial prospects and reputation.

Tenapanor, which has been approved by the FDA for the treatment of IBS-C, and/or our other product candidates, if approved, may cause or contribute to adverse medical events that we are required to report to regulatory agencies and if we fail to do so we could be subject to sanctions that would materially harm our business.

Some participants in clinical studies of tenapanor have reported adverse effects after being treated with tenapanor, including diarrhea, nausea, flatulence, abdominal discomfort, abdominal pain, abdominal distention and changes in electrolytes. If we are successful in commercializing any products, FDA and foreign regulatory agency regulations require that we report certain information about adverse medical events if those products may have caused or contributed to those adverse events. The timing of our obligation to report would be triggered by the date we become aware of the adverse event as well as the nature of the event. We may fail to report adverse events we become aware of within the prescribed timeframe. We may also fail to appreciate that we have become aware of a reportable adverse event, especially if it is not reported to us as an adverse event or if it is an adverse event that is unexpected or removed in time from the use of our products. If we fail to comply with our reporting obligations, the FDA or a foreign regulatory agency could take action, including criminal prosecution, the imposition of civil monetary penalties, seizure of our products or delay in approval or clearance of future products.

Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, collaboration partners, consultants and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements.

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, collaboration partners, consultants and vendors may engage in fraudulent conduct or other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless and/or negligent conduct or unauthorized activities that violate any of the following: FDA regulations, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate financial and other information to the FDA; manufacturing standards; or federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations. Specifically, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. These activities also include the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and other third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgements, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, individual imprisonment, other sanctions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

Failure to obtain regulatory approvals in foreign jurisdictions would prevent us from marketing our products internationally.

In order to market any product in the EEA (which is composed of the 27 Member States of the European Union plus Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein), and many other foreign jurisdictions, separate regulatory approvals are required. In the EEA, medicinal products can only be commercialized after obtaining a Marketing Authorization, or MA. Before the MA is granted, the EMA or the competent authorities of the Member States of the EEA make an assessment of the risk-benefit balance of the product on the basis of scientific criteria concerning its quality, safety and efficacy.

The approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional clinical testing, and the time required to obtain approval may differ from that required to obtain FDA approval. Clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries. Approval by the FDA does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other countries, and approval by one or more foreign regulatory authorities does not ensure approval by regulatory authorities in other foreign countries or by the FDA. However, a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one country may have a negative effect on the regulatory process in others. The foreign regulatory approval process may include all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA approval. We may not be able to file for regulatory approvals or to do so on a timely basis, and even if we do file we may not receive necessary approvals to commercialize our products in any market.

We and our collaboration partners may be subject to healthcare laws, regulation and enforcement; our failure or the failure of any such collaboration partners to comply with these laws could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial conditions.

Although we do not currently have any products on the market, once we begin commercializing our products, we and our collaboration partners may be subject to additional healthcare statutory and regulatory requirements and enforcement by the federal government and the states and foreign governments in which we conduct our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate as a commercial organization include:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, in exchange for or to induce either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, order or recommendation of, any good or service for which payment may be made under federal healthcare programs such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs. A person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of this statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;

- federal false claims laws which prohibit, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment from Medicare, Medicaid, or other third-party payors that are false or fraudulent. In addition, the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the false claims statutes;

- federal criminal laws that prohibit executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false statements relating to healthcare matters;

- the federal physician sunshine requirements under the Affordable Care Act, which requires manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies to report annually to CMS information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians, certain other healthcare providers beginning in 2022, and teaching hospitals, and ownership and investment interests held by physicians and other healthcare providers and their immediate family members;

- state law equivalents of each of the above federal laws, such as anti-kickback and false claims laws which may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers;

- state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the applicable compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources;

- state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or pricing information and marketing expenditures; and

- European and other foreign law equivalents of each of the laws, including reporting requirements detailing interactions with and payments to healthcare providers.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. The risk of our being found in violation of these laws is increased by the fact that many of them have not been fully interpreted by the regulatory authorities or the courts, and their provisions are open to a variety of interpretations. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental laws and regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, the exclusion from participation in federal and state healthcare programs and imprisonment, any of which could adversely affect our ability to market our products and adversely impact our financial results.

Legislative or regulatory healthcare reforms in the United States may make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain regulatory clearance or approval of our product candidates and to produce, market and distribute our products after clearance or approval is obtained.

From time to time, legislation is drafted and introduced in Congress that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the regulatory clearance or approval, manufacture, and marketing of regulated products or the reimbursement thereof. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the FDA in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of our product candidates. We cannot determine what effect changes in regulations, statutes, legal interpretation or policies, when and if promulgated, enacted or adopted may have on our business in the future. Such changes could, among other things, require:

- additional clinical trials to be conducted prior to obtaining approval;

- changes to manufacturing methods;

- recall, replacement, or discontinuance of one or more of our products; and

- additional record keeping.

Each of these would likely entail substantial time and cost and could materially harm our business and our financial results. In addition, delays in receipt of or failure to receive regulatory clearances or approvals for any future products would harm our business, financial condition and results of operations.

In addition, the full impact of recent healthcare reform and other changes in the healthcare industry and in healthcare spending is currently unknown, and may adversely affect our business model. In the United States, the Affordable Care Act was enacted in 2010 with a goal of reducing the cost of healthcare and substantially changing the way healthcare is financed by both government and private insurers. The Affordable Care Act, among other things, increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program and extended the rebate program to individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations, established annual fees and taxes on manufacturers of certain branded prescription drugs, and created a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries

during their coverage gap period as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D. The Bipartisan Budget Act of 2018 increased this discount to 70% beginning in January 2019.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the Affordable Care Act, as well as efforts by the current Presidential Administration to modify, or repeal all, or certain provisions of, the Affordable Care Act. By way of example, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 includes a provision repealing, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the ACA on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate." On December 14, 2018, a U.S. District Court Judge in the Northern District of Texas, ruled that the individual mandate is a critical and inseverable feature of the ACA, and therefore, because it was repealed as part of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, the remaining provisions of the ACA are invalid as well. On December 18, 2019, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the 5th Circuit upheld the District Court's decision that the individual mandate was unconstitutional but remanded the case back to the District Court to determine whether the remaining provisions of the ACA are invalid as well. It is unclear how these decisions, subsequent appeals, and other efforts to challenge, repeal, or replace the ACA will impact the ACA or our business. We cannot predict the reform initiatives that may be adopted in the future or whether initiatives that have been adopted will be repealed or modified. We cannot predict the reform initiatives that may be adopted in the future or whether initiatives that have been adopted will be repealed or modified. The continuing efforts of the government, insurance companies, managed care organizations and other payors of healthcare services to contain or reduce costs of healthcare may adversely affect the demand for any drug products for which we may obtain regulatory approval, our ability to set a price that we believe is fair for our products, our ability to obtain coverage and reimbursement approval for a product, our ability to generate revenues and achieve or maintain profitability, and the level of taxes that we are required to pay.

Other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the Affordable Care Act was enacted. These new laws, among other things, included aggregate reductions of Medicare payments of 2% per fiscal year to providers that will remain in effect through 2029 unless additional action is taken by Congress, additional specific reductions in Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and an increase in the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. Additionally, individual states have become increasingly active in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access, and to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. Recently, there has also been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products.

Risks Related to Intellectual Property

We may become subject to claims alleging infringement of third parties' patents or proprietary rights and/or claims seeking to invalidate our patents, which would be costly, time consuming and, if successfully asserted against us, delay or prevent the development and commercialization of tenapanor or our other product candidates, or prevent or delay the continued use of our drug discovery and development platform, including APECCS.

There have been many lawsuits and other proceedings asserting infringement or misappropriation of patents and other intellectual property rights in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries. There can be no assurances that we will not be subject to claims alleging that the manufacture, use or sale of tenapanor or any other product candidates, or that the use of our drug discovery and development platform, including APECCS, infringes existing or future third-party patents, or that such claims, if any, will not be successful. Because patent applications can take many years to issue and may be confidential for 18 months or more after filing, and because pending patent claims can be revised before issuance, there may be applications now pending which may later result in issued patents that may be infringed by the manufacture, use or sale of tenapanor or other product candidates or by the use of APECCS. Moreover, we may face patent infringement claims from non-practicing entities that have no relevant product revenue and against whom our own patent portfolio may thus have no deterrent effect. We may be unaware of one or more issued patents that would be infringed by the manufacture, sale or use of tenapanor or our other product candidates, or by the use of APECCS.

We may be subject to third-party patent infringement claims in the future against us or our that would cause us to incur substantial expenses and, if successful against us, could cause us to pay substantial damages, including treble damages and attorney's fees if we are found to be willfully infringing a third party's patents. We may be required to indemnify future collaboration partners against such claims. We are not aware of any threatened or pending claims related to these matters, but in the future litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If a patent infringement suit were brought against us we could be forced to stop or delay research, development, manufacturing or sales of the product or product candidate that is the subject of the suit. In addition, if a patent infringement suit were brought against us regarding the use of aspects of our drug discovery and development platform, we could be forced to stop our use of APECCS or of other aspects of our platform, or we could be forced to modify our processes to avoid infringement, which may not be possible at a reasonable cost, if at all, and which could result in substantial delay in our use of our platform for the discovery of new product candidates or potential targets. As a result of patent infringement claims, or in order to avoid potential claims, we may choose to seek, or be required to seek, a license from the third party and would most likely be required to pay license fees or royalties or both. These licenses may not be available on acceptable terms, or at all. Even if we were able to obtain a license, we may be unable to maintain such licenses and the rights may be nonexclusive, which would give our competitors access to the same intellectual property. Ultimately, we could be prevented from commercializing a product, or forced to redesign it, or to cease our use of APECCS or some other aspect of our drug discovery and development platform or our business operations if, as a result of actual or threatened patent infringement claims, we are unable to enter into licenses on acceptable terms, or unable to maintain such licenses when granted. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, such litigation can be expensive and time consuming to litigate and would divert management's attention from our core business. Any of these events could harm our business significantly.

In addition to infringement claims against us, if third parties prepare and file patent applications in the United States that also claim technology similar or identical to ours, we may have to participate in interference or derivation proceedings in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, or the USPTO, to determine which party is entitled to a patent on the disputed invention. We may also become involved in similar opposition proceedings in the European Patent Office or similar offices in other jurisdictions regarding our intellectual property rights with respect to our products and technology. Since patent applications are confidential for a period of time after filing, we cannot be certain that we were the first to file any patent application related to our product candidates.

If our intellectual property related to our product candidates is not adequate or if we are not able to protect our trade secrets or our confidential information, we may not be able to compete effectively in our market.

We rely upon a combination of patents, trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect the intellectual property related to our product candidates, our drug discovery and development platform and our development programs. Any disclosure to or misappropriation by third parties of our confidential or proprietary information could enable competitors to quickly duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market.

The strength of patents in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical field involves complex legal and scientific questions and can be uncertain. The patent applications that we own or license may fail to result in issued patents in the United States or in foreign countries. Additionally, our research and development efforts may result in product candidates for which patent protection is limited or not available. Even if patents do successfully issue, third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope thereof, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable. For example, U.S. patents can be challenged by any person before the new USPTO Patent Trial and Appeals Board at any time before one year after that person is served an infringement complaint based on the patents. Patents granted by the European Patent Office may be similarly opposed by any person within nine months from the publication of the grant. Similar proceedings are available in other jurisdictions, and in the United States, Europe and other jurisdictions third parties can raise questions of validity with a patent office even before a patent has granted. Furthermore, even if they are unchallenged, our patents and patent applications may not adequately protect our intellectual property or prevent others from designing around our claims. For example, a third party may develop a competitive product that provides therapeutic benefits similar to one or more of our product candidates but has a sufficiently different composition to fall outside the scope of our patent protection. If the breadth or strength of protection provided by the patents and patent applications we hold or pursue with respect to our product candidates is successfully challenged, then our ability to commercialize such product candidates could be negatively affected, and we may face unexpected competition that could have a material adverse impact on our

business. Further, if we encounter delays in our clinical trials, the period of time during which we or our collaboration partners could market tenapanor or other product candidates under patent protection would be reduced.

Even where laws provide protection, costly and time-consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and the outcome of such litigation would be uncertain. If we or one of our collaboration partners were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering the product candidate, the defendant could counterclaim that our patent is invalid and/or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity and/or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, including lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant information from the USPTO, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. With respect to validity, for example, we cannot be certain that there is no invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability against our intellectual property related to a product candidate, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on such product candidate. Such a loss of patent protection would have a material adverse impact on our business. Moreover, our competitors could counterclaim that we infringe their intellectual property, and some of our competitors have substantially greater intellectual property portfolios than we do.

We also rely on trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect proprietary know-how that may not be patentable, processes for which patents may be difficult to obtain and/or enforce and any other elements of our drug discovery and development processes that involve proprietary know-how, information or technology that is not covered by patents. Although we require all of our employees, consultants, advisors and any third parties who have access to our proprietary know-how, information or technology, to assign their inventions to us, and endeavor to execute confidentiality agreements with all such parties, we cannot be certain that we have executed such agreements with all parties who may have helped to develop our intellectual property or who had access to our proprietary information, nor can we be certain that our agreements will not be breached by such consultants, advisors or third parties, or by our former employees. The breach of such agreements by individuals or entities who are actively involved in the discovery and design of our potential drug candidates, or in the development of our discovery and design platform, including APECCS, could require us to pursue legal action to protect our trade secrets and confidential information, which would be expensive, and the outcome of which would be unpredictable. If we are not successful in prohibiting the continued breach of such agreements, our business could be negatively impacted. We cannot guarantee that our trade secrets and other confidential proprietary information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or independently develop substantially equivalent information and techniques.

Further, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect proprietary rights to the same extent or in the same manner as the laws of the United States. As a result, we may encounter significant problems in protecting and defending our intellectual property both in the United States and abroad. If we are unable to prevent material disclosure of the intellectual property related to our technologies to third parties, we will not be able to establish or maintain a competitive advantage in our market, which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

If we do not obtain patent term extension in the United States under the Hatch-Waxman Act and in foreign countries under similar legislation, thereby potentially extending the term of marketing exclusivity for our product candidates, our business may be materially harmed.

Following the approval by the FDA for our NDA to market tenapanor for IBS-C, we became eligible to seek and sought patent term restoration under the Hatch-Waxman Act for one of the U.S. patents covering our approved product or the use thereof. The Hatch-Waxman Act allows a maximum of one patent to be extended per FDA approved product. Patent term extension also may be available in certain foreign countries upon regulatory approval of our product candidates. Despite seeking patent term extension for tenapanor or other product candidates, we may not be granted patent term extension either in the United States or in any foreign country because of, for example, failing to apply within applicable deadlines, failing to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise failing to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the term of extension, as well as the scope of patent protection during any such extension, afforded by the governmental authority could be less than we request.

If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or restoration, or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we will have the right to exclusively market our product will be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval of competing products following our patent expiration, and our revenue could be reduced, possibly materially.

Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.

The USPTO and various foreign patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other provisions to maintain patent applications and issued patents. Noncompliance with these requirements can result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, competitors might be able to enter the market earlier than would otherwise have been the case.

We may not be able to enforce our intellectual property rights throughout the world.

The laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in certain foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of some countries, particularly developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents and other intellectual property protection, especially those relating to life sciences. This could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or the misappropriation of our other intellectual property rights. For example, many foreign countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner must grant licenses to third parties.

Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in our expected significant markets, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market our products. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate. In addition, changes in the law and legal decisions by courts in the United States and foreign countries may affect our ability to obtain and enforce adequate intellectual property protection for our technology.

We may be subject to claims that we or our employees have misappropriated the intellectual property, including know-how or trade secrets, of a third party, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.

Many of our employees, consultants and contractors were previously employed at or engaged by other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Some of these employees, consultants and contractors, executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure and non-competition agreements in connection with such previous employment. Although we try to ensure that our employees, consultants and contractors do not use the intellectual property and other proprietary information or know-how or trade secrets of others in their work for us, and do not perform work for us that is in conflict with their obligations to another employer or any other entity, we may be subject to claims that we or these employees, consultants and contractors have used or disclosed such intellectual property, including know-how, trade secrets or other proprietary information. In addition, an employee, advisor or consultant who performs work for us may have obligations to a third party that are in conflict with their obligations to us, and as a result such third party may claim an ownership interest in the intellectual property arising out of work performed for us. We are not aware of any threatened or pending claims related to these matters, but in the future litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel, or access to consultants and contractors. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

In addition, while we typically require our employees, consultants and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who in fact develops intellectual property that we regard as

our own, which may result in claims by or against us related to the ownership of such intellectual property. If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights. Even if we are successful in prosecuting or defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to our management and scientific personnel.

Risks Related to Our Common Stock

Our stock price may be volatile and our stockholders may not be able to resell shares of our common stock at or above the price they paid.

The trading price of our common stock is highly volatile and could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control. These factors include those discussed in this "Risk Factors" section and others such as:

- results from, or any delays in, clinical trial programs relating to our product candidates;
- the success of our efforts to establish a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor for IBS-C in the United States;
- our ability, alone or with collaboration partners, to commercialize or obtain regulatory approval for tenapanor, or delays in commercializing or obtaining regulatory approval;
- announcements of regulatory approval, results of regulatory inspections of our facilities or those of our contract manufacturing organizations, or specific label restrictions or patient populations for tenapanor's use, or changes or delays in the regulatory review process;
- announcements relating to our current or future collaboration partnerships;
- announcements of therapeutic innovations or new products by us or our competitors;
- adverse actions taken by regulatory agencies with respect to our product label, our clinical trials, manufacturing supply chain or sales and marketing activities;
- changes or developments in laws or regulations applicable to our product candidates;
- the success of our testing and clinical trials;
- failure to meet any of our projected timelines or goals with regard to the clinical development of any of our product candidates;
- the success of our efforts to acquire or license or discover additional product candidates;
- any intellectual property infringement actions in which we may become involved;
- the success of our efforts to obtain adequate intellectual property protection for our product candidates;
- announcements concerning our competitors or the pharmaceutical industry in general;
- achievement of expected product sales and profitability;
- manufacture, supply or distribution shortages;

- actual or anticipated fluctuations in our operating results;
- FDA or other U.S. or foreign regulatory actions affecting us or our industry or other healthcare reform measures in the United States;
- changes in financial estimates or recommendations by securities analysts;
- trading volume of our common stock;
- sales of our common stock by us, our executive officers and directors or our stockholders in the future;
- sales of debt securities and sales or licensing of assets;
- general economic and market conditions and overall fluctuations in the United States equity markets; and
- the loss of any of our key scientific or management personnel.

In addition, the stock markets in general, and the markets for pharmaceutical, biopharmaceutical and biotechnology stocks in particular, have experienced extreme volatility that may have been unrelated to the operating performance of the issuer. These broad market fluctuations may adversely affect the trading price or liquidity of our common stock. In the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have sometimes instituted securities class action litigation against the issuer. If any of our stockholders were to bring such a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit and the attention of our management would be diverted from the operation of our business, which could seriously harm our financial position. Any adverse determination in litigation could also subject us to significant liabilities.

Our principal stockholders own a significant percentage of our stock and, together with our management, will be able to exert significant control over matters subject to stockholder approval.

Based on the number of shares outstanding as of December 31, 2019, our officers, directors and affiliated stockholders who hold at least 5% of our stock together beneficially own approximately 52.2% of our outstanding common stock. If these officers, directors, and principal stockholders or a group of our principal stockholders act together, they will be able to exert a significant degree of influence over our management and affairs and control matters requiring stockholder approval, including the election of directors, amendments to our organizational documents, and approval of any merger, sale of assets or other business combination transactions. The interests of this concentration of ownership may not always coincide with our interests or the interests of other stockholders. For instance, officers, directors and principal stockholders, acting together, could cause us to enter into transactions or agreements that we would not otherwise consider. Similarly, this concentration of ownership may have the effect of delaying or preventing a change in control of our company otherwise favored by our other stockholders. As of December 31, 2019, entities affiliated with New Enterprise Associates, or NEA, a venture capital fund associated with one of our directors, collectively beneficially owned approximately 19.4% of our common stock, including shares that NEA has the right to acquire within 60 days of December 31, 2019 upon exercise of warrants held by NEA.

If we sell shares of our common stock in future financings, stockholders may experience immediate dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.

We may from time to time issue additional shares of common stock at a discount from the current trading price of our common stock. As a result, our stockholders would experience immediate dilution upon the purchase of any shares of our common stock sold at such discount. In addition, as opportunities present themselves, we may enter into financing or similar arrangements in the future, including the issuance of debt securities, preferred stock or common stock. If we issue common stock or securities convertible into common stock, our common stockholders would experience additional dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market could cause our stock price to fall.

If our existing stockholders sell, or indicate an intention to sell, substantial amounts of our common stock in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline. As of December 31, 2019, we had 88,817,741 shares of common stock outstanding. Of those shares, approximately 43.9 million were held by current directors, executive officers and stockholders owning 5% or more of our outstanding common stock.

As of December 31, 2019, approximately 0.8 million shares of common stock issuable upon vesting of outstanding restricted stock units and approximately 7.3 million shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding options were eligible for sale in the public market to the extent permitted by the provisions of the applicable vesting schedules, and Rule 144 and Rule 701 under the Securities Act. In addition, as of December 31, 2019, approximately 2.2 million shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding warrants were eligible for sale in the public market. If these additional shares of common stock are issued and sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline.

Provisions in our charter documents and under Delaware law could discourage a takeover that stockholders may consider favorable and may lead to entrenchment of management.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws contain provisions that could significantly reduce the value of our shares to a potential acquirer or delay or prevent changes in control or changes in our management without the consent of our board of directors. The provisions in our charter documents include the following:

- a classified board of directors with three-year staggered terms, which may delay the ability of stockholders to change the membership of a majority of our board of directors;
- no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which limits the ability of minority stockholders to elect director candidates;
- the exclusive right of our board of directors to elect a director to fill a vacancy created by the expansion of the board of directors or the resignation, death or removal of a director, which prevents stockholders from being able to fill vacancies on our board of directors;
- the required approval of at least two-thirds of the shares entitled to vote to remove a director for cause, and the prohibition on removal of directors without cause;
- the ability of our board of directors to authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock and to determine the price and other terms of those shares, including preferences and voting rights, without stockholder approval, which could be used to significantly dilute the ownership of a hostile acquirer;
- the ability of our board of directors to alter our bylaws without obtaining stockholder approval;
- the required approval of at least two-thirds of the shares entitled to vote at an election of directors to adopt, amend or repeal our bylaws or repeal the provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation regarding the election and removal of directors;
- a prohibition on stockholder action by written consent, which forces stockholder action to be taken at an annual or special meeting of our stockholders;
- the requirement that a special meeting of stockholders may be called only by the chairman of the board of directors, the chief executive officer, the president or the board of directors, which may delay the ability of our stockholders to force consideration of a proposal or to take action, including the removal of directors; and

- advance notice procedures that stockholders must comply with in order to nominate candidates to our board of directors or to propose matters to be acted upon at a stockholders' meeting, which may discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect the acquirer's own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

In addition, these provisions would apply even if we were to receive an offer that some stockholders may consider beneficial.

We are also subject to the anti-takeover provisions contained in Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. Under Section 203, a corporation may not, in general, engage in a business combination with any holder of 15% or more of its capital stock unless the holder has held the stock for three years or, among other exceptions, the board of directors has approved the transaction.

Claims for indemnification by our directors and officers may reduce our available funds to satisfy successful third-party claims against us and may reduce the amount of money available to us.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws provide that we will indemnify our directors and officers, in each case to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law.

In addition, as permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated bylaws and our indemnification agreements that we have entered into with our directors and officers provide that:

- We will indemnify our directors and officers for serving us in those capacities or for serving other business enterprises at our request, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that a corporation may indemnify such person if such person acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the registrant and, with respect to any criminal proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe such person's conduct was unlawful.

- We may, in our discretion, indemnify employees and agents in those circumstances where indemnification is permitted by applicable law.

- We are required to advance expenses, as incurred, to our directors and officers in connection with defending a proceeding, except that such directors or officers shall undertake to repay such advances if it is ultimately determined that such person is not entitled to indemnification.

- We will not be obligated pursuant to our amended and restated bylaws to indemnify a person with respect to proceedings initiated by that person against us or our other indemnitees, except with respect to proceedings authorized by our board of directors or brought to enforce a right to indemnification.

- The rights conferred in our amended and restated bylaws are not exclusive, and we are authorized to enter into indemnification agreements with our directors, officers, employees and agents and to obtain insurance to indemnify such persons.

- We may not retroactively amend our amended and restated bylaw provisions to reduce our indemnification obligations to directors, officers, employees and agents.

We do not currently intend to pay dividends on our common stock, and, consequently, our stockholders' ability to achieve a return on their investment will depend on appreciation in the price of our common stock.

We do not currently intend to pay any cash dividends on our common stock for the foreseeable future. We currently intend to invest our future earnings, if any, to fund our growth. Additionally, the terms of our loan and security agreements could restrict our ability to pay dividends. Therefore, our stockholders are not likely to receive any dividends

on our common stock for the foreseeable future. Since we do not intend to pay dividends, our stockholders' ability to receive a return on their investment will depend on any future appreciation in the market value of our common stock. There is no guarantee that our common stock will appreciate or even maintain the price at which our holders have purchased it.

ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

Our headquarters is currently located in Fremont, California, and consists of 72,500 square feet of leased office and laboratory space under a lease that expires in September 2021, with an option to extend the lease term subsequently by five years. In addition, we lease 3,520 square feet of office space in Waltham, Massachusetts, under a lease that currently expires in September 2021. We believe that our existing facilities are adequate for our current needs. If we determine that additional or new facilities are needed in the future, we believe that sufficient options would be available to us on commercially reasonable terms.

ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

From time to time, we may be involved in legal proceedings arising in the ordinary course of business. We believe that as of December 31, 2019, there is no litigation pending that would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and financial condition.

ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.

PART II

ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

Common Stock

On June 19, 2014, our common stock commenced trading on The Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol "ARDX". Prior to that date, there was no public trading market for our common stock. As of December 31, 2019, there were 35 holders of record of our common stock.

Dividends

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain any future earnings to finance the growth and development of our business.

Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

As disclosed in our Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on December 2, 2019, on November 22, 2019, we entered into a Stock Purchase Agreement with KKC pursuant to which we sold an aggregate of 2,873,563 shares of common stock in a private placement exempt from registration pursuant to the exemption for transactions by an issuer not involving any public offering under Section 4(a)(2) the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), and Regulation D under the Securities Act. In accordance with the instructions to Part II, Item 5(a) of Form 10-K, the Item 701 information is omitted from this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Use of Proceeds

Not applicable.

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

Not applicable.

ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The data set forth below is not necessarily indicative of the results of future operations and should be read in conjunction with the financial statements and the notes included elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K and also with "ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS" and our financial statements and the notes thereto included in Part II, Item 8, of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

	Year Ended December 31,				
Statement of Operations Data:	**2019**	**2018**	**2017**	**2016**	**2015**
	(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)				
Revenue:					
Licensing revenue	$ 4,500	$ 2,320	$ 42,000	$ —	$ 21,611
Collaborative development revenue	459	—	—	—	2,415
Other revenue	322	287	—	—	—
Total revenues	5,281	2,607	42,000	—	24,026
Cost of revenue	600	466	8,400	—	—
Gross profit	4,681	2,141	33,600	—	24,026
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	71,677	69,373	75,484	94,161	39,885
General and administrative	24,267	23,715	23,231	18,734	13,530
Total operating expenses	95,944	93,088	98,715	112,895	53,415
Loss from operations	(91,263)	(90,947)	(65,115)	(112,895)	(29,389)
Interest expense	(5,726)	(3,534)	—	—	—
Other income (expense), net	2,352	3,187	1,955	508	(261)
Loss before provision for income taxes	(94,637)	(91,294)	(63,160)	(112,387)	(29,650)
Provision for (benefit from) income taxes	303	4	1,179	—	(29)
Net loss	$ (94,940)	$ (91,298)	$ (64,339)	$ (112,387)	$ (29,621)
Net loss per common share, basic and diluted	$ (1.47)	$ (1.62)	$ (1.36)	$ (2.80)	$ (1.29)
Shares used in computing net loss per share - basic and diluted	64,478,066	56,219,919	47,435,331	40,118,522	22,892,640

	As of December 31,				
Balance Sheet Data:	**2019**	**2018**	**2017**	**2016**	**2015**
	(in thousands)				
Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments	$ 247,512	$ 168,089	$ 133,976	$ 200,823	$ 107,004
Total assets	259,782	183,332	157,903	213,131	116,946
Loan payable, net of current portion	48,831	49,209	—	—	—
Accumulated deficit	(460,452)	(365,512)	(278,214)	(213,875)	(101,488)
Total stockholders' equity	186,655	115,813	139,312	193,151	108,901

ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations in conjunction with the section of this report entitled "Selected Financial Data" and our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this report. This discussion and other parts of this report contain forward-looking statements that involve risk and uncertainties, such as statements of our plans, objectives, expectations and intentions. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in these forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include, but are not limited to, those discussed in the section of this report entitled "Risk Factors." These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date hereof. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update or revise these forward-looking statements for any reason. Unless the context requires otherwise, the terms "Ardelyx", "Company", "we", "us", and "our" refer to Ardelyx, Inc.

OVERVIEW

We are a specialized biopharmaceutical company focused on developing first-in-class medicines to improve treatment for people with cardiorenal diseases. This includes patients with chronic kidney disease, or CKD, on dialysis suffering from elevated serum phosphorus, or hyperphosphatemia; and patients with CKD and/or heart failure patients with elevated serum potassium, or hyperkalemia.

Our portfolio is led by the development of tenapanor, a first-in-class medicine in late-stage clinical development for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis. Tenapanor has a unique mechanism of action and acts locally in the gut to inhibit the sodium hydrogen exchanger 3, or NHE3. This results in the tightening of the epithelial cell junctions, thereby significantly reducing paracellular uptake of phosphate, the primary pathway of phosphate absorption.

We have evaluated tenapanor in a Phase 3 program for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis. In December 2019, we reported statistically significant topline efficacy results from our second monotherapy Phase 3 clinical trial, the PHREEDOM trial. The PHREEDOM trial followed a successful monotherapy Phase 3 clinical trial completed in 2017, which achieved statistical significance for the primary endpoint. PHREEDOM is a one-year study with a 26-week open-label treatment period and a 12-week double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized withdrawal period followed by a 14-week open-label safety extension period. An active safety control group, for safety analysis only, received sevelamer, open-label, for the entire 52-week study period. Patients completing the PHREEDOM trial from both the tenapanor arm and the sevelamer active safety control arm had the option to participate in NORMALIZE, an ongoing open-label 18-month extension study. The goal of the NORMALIZE study is to further our understanding of the potential for the dual mechanism of tenapanor and sevelamer to reduce patients' serum phosphorus levels towards normal (<4.6 mg/dL) while minimizing medication burden. In addition, in September 2019, we reported positive results from the AMPLIFY trial, a Phase 3 study evaluating tenapanor in patients with CKD on dialysis who had uncontrolled hyperphosphatemia despite phosphate binder treatment.

We are preparing to submit a New Drug Application, or NDA, to the United States Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in adult patients with CKD on dialysis in mid-2020. Tenapanor, if approved, would be the first therapy for phosphate management that is not a phosphate binder. As tenapanor is a novel, potent, small molecule there would be significantly less pill burden than with phosphate binders. Tenapanor is dosed as a single pill, twice-daily, which we believe could greatly improve patient adherence and compliance and free patients from having to take multiple pills before every meal.

We are also advancing a small molecule potassium secretagogue program, RDX013, for the potential treatment of hyperkalemia. Hyperkalemia is a common problem in patients with heart and kidney disease, particularly in patients taking common blood pressure medications known as RAAS inhibitors, which inhibit the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Similar to what we have done with tenapanor in developing a non-binder approach for the treatment of elevated serum phosphate levels, RDX013 is designed to offer a non-binder alternative to lowering elevated potassium with a much lower pill burden than potassium binders and we believe may provide significant advantages as a stand-alone agent or in combination with potassium binders.

In addition to the development of tenapanor in our cardiorenal portfolio, we have developed tenapanor for the treatment of patients with irritable bowel syndrome with constipation, or IBS-C. On September 12, 2019, we received US FDA approval of IBSRELA® (tenapanor) for the treatment of IBS-C in adults. IBS-C is a burdensome GI disorder affecting a significant number of people. It is characterized by significant abdominal pain, constipation, straining during bowel movements, bloating and/or gas.

IBSRELA (tenapanor) is a locally acting inhibitor NHE3, an antiporter expressed on the apical surface of the small intestine and colon primarily responsible for the absorption of dietary sodium. By inhibiting NHE3 on the apical surface of the enterocytes, tenapanor reduces absorption of sodium from the small intestine and colon, resulting in an increase in water secretion into the intestinal lumen, which accelerates intestinal transit time and results in a softer stool consistency. Tenapanor has also been shown to reduce abdominal pain by decreasing visceral hypersensitivity and by decreasing intestinal permeability in animal models. In a rat model of colonic hypersensitivity, tenapanor reduced visceral hyperalgesia and normalized colonic sensory neuronal excitability.

We have developed a proprietary drug discovery and design platform to discover targets found in the GI tract that regulate processes in the body and design product candidates that act upon those targets to take advantage of the gut's ability to communicate with other organs.

Since commencing operations in October 2007, substantially all our efforts have been dedicated to our research and development activities, including developing our clinical product candidate tenapanor and developing our proprietary drug discovery and design platform. We have not generated any revenues from product sales. As of December 31, 2019, we had an accumulated deficit of $460.5 million.

We expect to continue to incur substantial operating losses for the foreseeable future as a result of costs associated with the following activities: our continued development of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis; the preparation of the NDA to seek marketing approval in the United States for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in patients with CKD on dialysis; our preparations for the commercialization of tenapanor in the United States for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, including significant increased personnel costs associated with building out our commercial team; the performance of certain activities required as a result of our NDA approval of tenapanor for IBS-C, including costs associated with conducting the pediatric clinical trials for IBS-C; and the advancement of our research programs into the preclinical stage. To date, we have funded our operations from the sale and issuance of common stock and convertible preferred stock, funds from our collaboration partnerships, and funds from our Loan Agreement with Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank.

FINANCIAL OPERATIONS OVERVIEW

Revenue

Our revenue to date has been generated primarily through license, research and development collaborative agreements with various collaboration partners. We have not generated any revenue from product sales. In the future, we may generate revenue from a combination of license fees and other upfront payments, milestone payments, product sales and royalties in connection with our current or future collaborative partnerships. We expect that any revenue we generate will fluctuate in future periods as a result of, among other factors: the timing and progress of goods and services provided pursuant to our current or future collaborative partnerships; our or our collaborators' achievement of preclinical, clinical, regulatory or commercialization milestones, to the extent achieved; the timing and amount of any payments to us relating to the aforementioned milestones; and the extent to which any of our product candidates are approved and successfully commercialized by us or a collaboration partner. If we, our current collaboration partners or any future collaboration partners fail to develop product candidates in a timely manner or to obtain regulatory approval for product candidates, our ability to generate future revenue from collaborative arrangements, and our results of operations and financial position, would be materially and adversely affected. Our past revenue performance is not necessarily indicative of results to be expected in future periods. See NOTE 2, SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES, in the notes to our financial statements, included in Part II, Item 8, of this Annual Report on Form 10-K, for further details.

Cost of Revenue

Cost of revenue currently represents payments due to AstraZeneca, which under the terms of a termination agreement entered into in 2015 is entitled to (i) future royalties at a rate of 10% of net sales of tenapanor or other NHE3 products by us or our licensees, and (ii) 20% of non-royalty revenue received from a new collaboration partner should we elect to license, or otherwise provide rights to develop and commercialize tenapanor or certain other NHE3 inhibitors. We have agreed to pay AstraZeneca up to a maximum of $75.0 million in the aggregate for (i) and (ii). We recognize these expenses as cost of revenue when we recognize the corresponding revenue that gives rise to payments due to AstraZeneca. To date, we have recognized an aggregate of $10.5 million of the $75.0 million under the AZ Termination Agreement. See details in NOTE 13, COLLABORATION AND LICENSING AGREEMENTS, under AstraZeneca, in the notes to our financial statements, included in Part II, Item 8, of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Research and Development

We recognize all research and development expenses as they are incurred to support the discovery, research, development and manufacturing of our product candidates. Research and development expenses consist of the following:

- external research and development expenses incurred under agreements with consultants, third-party contract research organizations, or CROs, and investigative sites where a substantial portion of our clinical studies are conducted, and with contract manufacturing organizations where our clinical supplies are produced;
- expenses associated with supplies and materials consumed in connection with our research operations;
- employee-related expenses, which include salaries, bonuses, benefits, travel and stock-based compensation;
- other costs associated with regulatory, clinical and non-clinical development activities; and
- facilities and other allocated expenses, which include direct and allocated expenses for rent and maintenance of facilities, depreciation and amortization expense, information technology expense and other supplies.

We expect to continue to make substantial investments in research and development activities as we further progress the development of tenapanor, as well as our other product candidates, as we advance our research programs into the preclinical stage and as we continue our early stage research. The process of conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials necessary to obtain regulatory approval is costly and time-consuming. We may not succeed in achieving marketing approval for all of our product candidates, including tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus. Additionally, for the marketing approval received in the United States for tenapanor for the treatment of IBS-C, we may not be successful in securing one or more collaboration partners to commercialize tenapanor in the United States or in other territories. The probability of success of each of the product candidates may be affected by numerous factors, including preclinical data, clinical data, market acceptance, sufficient third-party coverage or reimbursement, our ability to access capital on acceptable terms, competition, manufacturing capability and commercial viability.

We anticipate that we will make determinations as to which programs to pursue and how much funding to direct to each program on an ongoing basis in response to the scientific and clinical success of each product candidate, ongoing assessment as to each product candidate’s commercial potential, and our ability to access capital on acceptable terms. We will need to raise additional capital and will seek additional collaboration partnerships in order to complete the development and commercialization of tenapanor. If we are unable to access capital on a timely basis and on terms that are acceptable to us, we may be forced to restructure certain aspects of our business or identify and complete one or more strategic collaborations or other transactions in order to fund the development or commercialization of tenapanor or certain of our product candidates through the use of alternative structures.

General and Administrative

General and administrative expenses consist primarily of salaries and related benefits, including stock-based compensation, for our executive, board, finance, legal, business development, market development, commercial and support staff. Other general and administrative expenses include facility related costs and professional fees for legal, accounting and audit, investor relations, other consulting services and allocated facility-related costs not otherwise included in research and development expenses.

We anticipate that our general and administrative expenses will increase in the future primarily because of increased pre-commercial activities, personnel costs and professional fees for services to support the potential launch and commercialization of tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis.

Interest Expense

Interest expense represents the interest paid on our loan payable.

Other Income, net

Other income consists of interest income earned on our cash and cash equivalents and held-to-maturity investments, the periodic revaluation of the exit fee related to our loan and currency exchange gains and losses.

Provision for Income Taxes

Our provision for income taxes includes current and deferred tax, including foreign withholding taxes paid on payments received from certain collaboration partners. Deferred income taxes reflect the tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. Our deferred tax assets continue to be fully offset by a valuation allowance, including deferred tax assets related to our net operating loss carryforwards, which may be subject to annual limitations as a result of ownership changes that may have occurred or could occur in the future.

CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICES AND ESTIMATES

A detailed discussion of our significant accounting policies can be found in NOTE 2, SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES, in the notes to our financial statements, included in Part II, Item 8, of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Critical accounting policies are those that require significant judgment and/or estimates by management at the time that financial statements are prepared such that materially different results might have been reported if other assumptions had been made. These estimates form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities. We base our estimates and judgments on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ materially from these estimates.

We consider certain accounting policies related to revenue recognition, accrued research and development expenses and stock-based compensation to be critical policies to understanding the judgments and estimates applied in our reported financial results.

Revenue Recognition

We generate revenue primarily from research and collaboration and license agreements with customers. Goods and services in the agreements may include the grant of licenses for the use of our technology, the provision of services associated with the research and development of product candidates, manufacturing services, and participation in joint steering committees. The terms of these arrangements typically include payment to us of one or more of the following:

non-refundable, up-front license fees; research, development, regulatory and commercial milestone payments; reimbursement of research and development services; option payments; reimbursement of certain costs; payments for manufacturing supply services; and future royalties on net sales of licensed products.

When two or more contracts are entered into with the same customer at or near the same time, we evaluate the contracts to determine whether the contracts should be accounted for as a single arrangement. Contracts are combined and accounted for as a single arrangement if one or more of the following criteria are met: (i) the contracts are negotiated as a package with a single commercial objective; (ii) the amount of consideration to be paid in one contract depends on the price or performance of the other contract; or (iii) the goods or services promised in the contracts (or some goods or services promised in each of the contracts) are a single performance obligation.

In determining the appropriate amount of revenue to be recognized as we fulfill our obligations under each of our agreements, management performs the following steps: (i) identification of the promised goods or services in the contract; (ii) determination of whether the promised goods or services are performance obligations including whether they are distinct in the context of the contract; (iii) measurement of the transaction price, including any constraints on variable consideration; (iv) allocation of the transaction price to the performance obligations; and (v) recognition of revenue when (or as) we satisfy each performance obligation. As part of the accounting for contracts with customers, we develop assumptions that require judgment to determine whether promised goods and services represent distinct performance obligations and the standalone selling price for each performance obligation identified in the contract. This evaluation is subjective and requires us to make judgments about the promised goods and services and whether those goods and services are separable from other aspects of the contract. Further, determining the standalone selling price for performance obligations requires significant judgment, and when an observable price of a promised good or service is not readily available, we consider relevant assumptions to estimate the standalone selling price, including, as applicable, market conditions, development timelines, probabilities of technical and regulatory success, reimbursement rates for personnel costs, forecasted revenues, potential limitations to the selling price of the product and discount rates.

We apply judgment in determining whether a combined performance obligation is satisfied at a point in time or over time, and, if over time, concluding upon the appropriate method of measuring progress to be applied for purposes of recognizing revenue. We evaluate the measure of progress each reporting period and, as estimates related to the measure of progress change, related revenue recognition is adjusted accordingly. Changes in our estimated measure of progress are accounted for prospectively as a change in accounting estimate. We recognize collaboration revenue by measuring the progress toward complete satisfaction of the performance obligation using an input measure. In order to recognize revenue over the research and development period, we measure actual costs incurred to date compared to the overall total expected costs to satisfy the performance obligation. Revenues are recognized as the program costs are incurred. We will re-evaluate the estimate of expected costs to satisfy the performance obligation each reporting period and make adjustments for any significant changes. Amounts received prior to satisfying the revenue recognition criteria are recorded as contract liabilities in our balance sheets. If the related performance obligation is expected to be satisfied within the next twelve months, this will be classified in current liabilities. Amounts recognized as revenue prior to receipt are recorded as contract assets in our balance sheets. If we expect to have an unconditional right to receive the consideration in the next twelve months, this will be classified in current assets. A net contract asset or liability is presented for each contract with a customer.

Milestone Payments: At the inception of each arrangement that includes research and development milestone payments, we evaluate whether the milestones are considered probable of being reached and estimate the amount to be included in the transaction price using the most likely amount method. Amounts of variable consideration are included in the transaction price to the extent that it is probable that a significant reversal in the amount of cumulative revenue recognized will not occur and when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is subsequently resolved. Milestone payments that are not within the control of us or the licensee, such as regulatory approvals, are not considered probable of being achieved until those approvals are received. The transaction price is then allocated to each performance obligation on a relative standalone selling price basis, for which we recognize revenue as or when the performance obligations under the contract are satisfied. At the end of each subsequent reporting period, we re-evaluate the probability of achievement of such development milestones and any related constraints, and if necessary, adjust our estimate of the overall transaction price. Any such adjustments are recorded on a cumulative catch-up basis, which would affect earnings in the period of adjustment.

Manufacturing supply services: Arrangements that include a promise for the future supply of drug substance or drug product for either clinical development or commercial supply at the customer's discretion are generally considered as options. We assess if these options provide a material right to the licensee and if so, they are accounted for as separate performance obligations. If we are entitled to additional payments when the customer exercises these options, any payments are recorded in other revenues when the customer obtains control of the goods, which is upon delivery.

Royalties: For arrangements that include sales-based royalties, including milestone payments based on the level of sales, and where the license is deemed to be the predominant item to which the royalties relate, we recognize revenue at the later of (i) when the related sales occur, or (ii) when the performance obligation to which some or all of the royalty has been allocated has been satisfied (or partially satisfied). To date, we have not recognized any royalty revenue resulting from any of our licensing arrangements.

Licenses of intellectual property: If a license granted to a customer to use our intellectual property is determined to be distinct from the other performance obligations identified in the arrangement, we recognize revenue from consideration allocated to the license when the license is transferred to the licensee and the licensee is able to use and benefit from the license. For licenses that are bundled with other promises, we apply judgment to assess the nature of the combined performance obligation to determine whether the combined performance obligation is satisfied over time or at a point in time and, if over time, to conclude upon the appropriate method of measuring progress for purposes of recognizing revenue related to consideration allocated to the performance obligation.

Options: Customer options, such as options granted to allow a licensee to choose to research, develop and commercialize licensed compounds are evaluated at contract inception in order to determine whether those options provide a material right (i.e., an optional good or service offered for free or at a discount) to the customer. If the customer options represent a material right, the material right is treated as a separate performance obligation at the outset of the arrangement. We allocate the transaction price to material rights based on the standalone selling price, and revenue is recognized when or as the future goods or services are transferred or when the option expires. Customer options that are not material rights do not give rise to a separate performance obligation, and as such, the additional consideration that would result from a customer exercising an option in the future is not included in the transaction price for the current contract. Instead, the option is deemed a marketing offer, and additional option fee payments are recognized or being recognized as revenue when the licensee exercises the option. The exercise of an option that does not represent a material right is treated as a separate contract for accounting purposes.

Contract costs: We recognize as an asset the incremental costs of obtaining a contract with a customer if the costs are expected to be recovered. We have elected a practical expedient wherein we recognize the incremental costs of obtaining a contract as an expense when incurred if the amortization period of the asset that we otherwise would have recognized is one year or less. To date, we have not incurred any material incremental costs of obtaining a contract with a customer.

Contract modifications: Contract modifications, defined as changes in the scope or price (or both) of a contract that are approved by the parties to the contract, such as a contract amendment, exist when the parties to a contract approve a modification that either creates new or changes existing enforceable rights and obligations of the parties to the contract. Depending on facts and circumstances, we account for a contract modification as one of the following: (i) a separate contract; (ii) a termination of the existing contract and a creation of a new contract; or (iii) a combination of the preceding treatments. A contract modification is accounted for as a separate contract if the scope of the contract increases because of the addition of promised goods or services that are distinct and the price of the contract increases by an amount of consideration that reflects our standalone selling prices of the additional promised goods or services. When a contract modification is not considered a separate contract and the remaining goods or services are distinct from the goods or services transferred on or before the date of the contract modification, we account for the contract modification as a termination of the existing contract and a creation of a new contract. When a contract modification is not considered a separate contract and the remaining goods or services are not distinct, we account for the contract modification as an add-on to the existing contract and as an adjustment to revenue on a cumulative catch-up basis.

We receive payments from our licensees as established in each contract. Upfront payments and fees are recorded as deferred revenue upon receipt or when due and may require deferral of revenue recognition to a future

period until we perform our obligations under these arrangements. Where applicable, amounts are recorded as unbilled revenue when our right to consideration is unconditional. We do not assess whether a contract with a customer has a significant financing component if the expectation at contract inception is such that the period between payment by the licensees and the transfer of the promised goods or services to the licensees will be one year or less.

Accrued Research and Development Expenses

As part of the process of preparing our financial statements, we are required to estimate our accrued expenses. This process involves reviewing open contracts and purchase orders, communicating with our personnel to identify services that have been performed on our behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when we have not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of the actual cost. The majority of our service providers invoice us monthly in arrears for services performed or when contractual milestones are met. We make estimates of our accrued expenses as of each balance sheet date in our financial statements based on facts and circumstances known to us at that time. We periodically confirm the accuracy of our estimates with the service providers and make adjustments if necessary. Examples of estimated accrued research and development expenses include fees paid to:

- CROs in connection with clinical studies;
- investigative sites in connection with clinical studies;
- vendors related to product manufacturing, development and distribution of clinical supplies;
- collaborator entities in connection with our collaboration agreements; and
- vendors in connection with preclinical development activities.

We record expenses related to clinical studies and manufacturing development activities based on our estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to contracts with our CROs and manufacturing vendors that conduct and manage these activities on our behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract, and may result in uneven payment flows. There may be instances in which payments made to our vendors will exceed the level of services provided and result in a prepayment of the expense. Payments under some of these contracts depend on factors such as the successful enrollment of subjects and the completion of clinical trial milestones. In accruing service fees, we estimate the time period over which each component of a service will be performed, and estimate, with vendor input if appropriate, the resulting level of completion of each component of the service, with such estimates often involving drivers that provide a surrogate measurement of completion such as number of enrolled subjects and/or number of sites activated in the calculation of clinical trial fee accruals. If the actual timing of the performance of services or the level of effort varies from our estimate, we adjust the accrued or prepaid expense balance accordingly. Although we do not expect our estimates to be materially different from amounts actually incurred, if our estimates of the status and timing of services performed differ from the actual status and timing of services performed, we may report amounts that are too high or too low in any particular period.

Stock-Based Compensation

We estimate the fair value of stock options and Employee Stock Purchase Plan, or ESPP, shares using the Black-Scholes valuation model. The Black-Scholes model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions which determine the fair value of stock-based awards. These assumptions include:

Expected Term—We have limited historical information to develop reasonable expectations about future exercise patterns and post-vesting employment termination behavior for our stock-option grants. As such, the expected term is estimated using the simplified method whereby the expected term equals the arithmetic average of the vesting term and the original contractual term of the option.

Expected Volatility— Since January 1, 2017, we have used the historic volatility of our own stock over the retrospective period corresponding to the expected remaining term of the options, or the period since our shares were first quoted on The Nasdaq Global Market, if that is shorter, to compute our expected stock price volatility.

Risk-Free Interest Rate—The risk-free interest rate assumption is based on the zero-coupon U.S. Treasury instruments on the date of grant with a maturity date consistent with the expected term of our stock option grants.

Expected Dividend— To date, we have not declared or paid any cash dividends and do not have any plans to do so in the future. Therefore, we use an expected dividend yield of zero.

As required, we review our valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, we are likely to change our valuation assumptions used to value employee stock-based awards granted in future periods. Employee and director stock-based compensation costs are to be recognized over the vesting period of the award, and we have elected to use the straight-line attribution method. Forfeitures are estimated at the time of grant and revised, if necessary, in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates. We estimate forfeitures based on historical experience.

Restricted stock units, or RSUs, are measured at the fair value of our common stock on the date of grant and expensed over the period of vesting using the straight-line attribution approach.

Performance-based RSUs, or PRSUs, are valued at grant-date fair market value. The vesting of the PRSUs is based on performance conditions. Performance conditions include: (i) a specific performance criteria and (ii) the employee's continuous employment by the company for a stated period of time in order to earn the right to the related PRSUs to vest. The Company recognizes compensation cost with respect to the vesting of the PRSUs on a ratable basis over the requisite service period, upon the performance conditions being deemed probable of achievement.

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Comparison of the Years Ended December 31, 2019 and 2018

Revenue

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
Licensing revenue	$ 4,500	$ 2,320
Collaborative development revenue	459	—
Other revenue	322	287
Total revenues	5,281	2,607
Dollar change from prior year	2,674	
Percent change from prior year	103 %	

Total revenues for the year ended December 31, 2019 were $5.3 million, which represents an increase of $2.7 million, or 103%, as compared to total revenues of $2.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The licensing revenue of $4.5 million is attributable to the achievement of a milestone, which amounted to $3.0 million, pursuant to our exclusive license agreement with Fosun Pharma, entered into in December 2017 for the development, commercialization and distribution of tenapanor in China for both hyperphosphatemia and IBS-C, and the full recognition of the $1.5 million license fee related to the XuanZhu Agreement, as discussed in NOTE 13, COLLABORATION AND LICENSING AGREEMENTS, to our financial statements, included in Part II, Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

The increase in collaborative development revenue of $0.5 million is attributable entirely to the revenue recognized, under the input method, during the fourth quarter of 2019 related to the 2019 KKC Agreement. We expect to recognize the remaining $9.5 million of the initial transaction price over the research and development period of the program that is currently expected to extend through the end of 2021. However, we will revisit our current estimates and timing of performance at the end of each future reporting period and adjust as necessary.

The other revenue of $0.3 million relates to the manufacturing supply of tenapanor and other materials sold to KKC in connection with that collaboration partner's product development and clinical trials in Japan.

Cost of Revenue

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
Cost of revenue	$ 600	$ 466
Dollar change from prior year	134	
Percent change from prior year	29 %	

Cost of revenue was $0.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2019, an increase of $0.1 million, or 29%, compared to $0.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The cost of revenue in both periods represent payments due to AstraZeneca under the AstraZeneca Termination Agreement and are related primarily to tenapanor-related up front and milestone payments from our collaboration partners.

Research and Development

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
Research and development	$ 71,677	$ 69,373
Dollar change from prior year	2,304	
Percent change from prior year	3 %	

Research and development expenses were $71.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2019, an increase of $2.3 million, or 3%, compared to $69.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The increase consisted of a $3.7 million increase in our internal program costs and a $1.4 million decrease in our external program costs.

The increase in our internal costs of $3.7 million was primarily due to an increase in headcount and related personnel costs and an increase in stock-based compensation expenses.

The decrease in our external program costs of $1.4 million included a $4.6 million decrease in expenses primarily related to manufacturing of tenapanor and regulatory expenses related to our IBS-C NDA in 2018, partially offset by $2.5 million increase in clinical development expenses related to our RDX013 program and a $0.7 million increase primarily related to our tenapanor clinical trial expenses that includes an out-of-period adjustment recorded during the second quarter of 2019 that reduced clinical trial expenses by $3.6 million related to our tenapanor clinical trials.

General and Administrative

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
General and administrative	$ 24,267	$ 23,715
Dollar change from prior year	552	
Percent change from prior year	2 %	

General and administrative expenses were $24.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2019, an increase of $0.6 million, or 2%, compared to $23.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The increase was primarily due to an increase in personnel costs, stock-based compensation expense, audit expenses and recruiting expenses, partially offset by a decrease in other professional services.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was $5.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2019, an increase of $2.2 million, or 62%, compared to $3.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The increase in interest expense in 2019 compared to 2018 was because the interest expense during 2018 represents only part of the year related to the loan agreement entered in May 2018, as compared with a full year of interest expense in 2019.

Other Income, net

Other income, net, was $2.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2019, which represents a decrease of $0.8 million, or 26%, compared to $3.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018. The decrease was primarily due to a decrease in treasury-related income and a revaluation to higher exit fee revaluation adjustments related to our loan agreement.

Comparison of the Years Ended December 31, 2018 and 2017

Revenue

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(in thousands)	
Licensing revenue	$ 2,320	$ 42,000
Other revenue	287	—
Total revenues	2,607	42,000
Dollar change from prior year	(39,393)	
Percent change from prior year	(94)%	

Total revenues were $2.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, a decrease of $39.4 million, or 94%, compared to $42.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. Total revenues of $2.6 million in the year ended December 31, 2018 included $2.3 million of licensing revenue related to the upfront payment from Knight and $0.3 million of other revenue related to the manufacturing supply of tenapanor and other materials to KKC, for its product development and clinical trials in Japan, in accordance with our license agreement with KKC. Total revenue of $42.0 million in the year ended December 31, 2017 was comprised of licensing revenue related to upfront payments in accordance with our KKC and Fosun Pharma license agreements.

Cost of Revenue

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(in thousands)	
Cost of revenue	$ 466	$ 8,400
Dollar change from prior year	(7,934)	
Percent change from prior year	(94)%	

Cost of revenue was $0.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, a decrease of $7.9 million, or 94%, compared to $8.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The cost of revenue in both periods represented payments due to AstraZeneca under the AstraZeneca Termination Agreement and are related primarily to tenapanor-related up front and milestone payments from our collaboration partners.

Research and Development

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(in thousands)	
Research and development	$ 69,373	$ 75,484
Dollar change from prior year	(6,111)	
Percent change from prior year	(8)%	

Research and development expenses were $69.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, a decrease of $6.1 million, or 8%, compared to $75.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The decrease consisted of a $1.1 million decrease in our external program costs and a $5.0 million decrease in our internal program costs.

The decrease in our external program costs of $1.1 million included a $11.7 million decrease due to discontinuation of the RDX7675 program and a $1.7 million reduction of activities associated with the RDX8940 program that was partially offset by a $12.3 million increase in expense primarily related to our tenapanor programs. The $12.3 million increase included an increase in expense related to the start of our second tenapanor hyperphosphatemia Phase 3 study that was partially offset by a decrease in expenses for clinical development activities related to the completion of our tenapanor IBS-C Phase 3 clinical program as well as our first tenapanor hyperphosphatemia Phase 3 clinical trial.

The decrease in our internal costs of $5.0 million was primarily due to a decrease in personnel costs, including stock-based compensation costs as a result of a reduction in force during the third quarter of 2017, and a related decrease in research and development activities

General and Administrative

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
	(in thousands)	
General and administrative	$ 23,715	$ 23,231
Dollar change from prior year	484	
Percent change from prior year	2 %	

General and administrative expenses were $23.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, an increase of $0.5 million, or 2%, compared to $23.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily due to an increase in professional services and stock-based compensation expense, partially offset by a reduction in personnel costs due to reduction in force during the third quarter of 2017.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was $3.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, an increase of $3.5 million, compared to zero for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase in 2018 represents loan and interest expense related to the loan agreement entered in May 2018.

Other Income, net

Other income, net was $3.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2018, an increase of $1.2 million, or 63%, compared to $2.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily due to an increase in treasury-related income, partially offset by currency exchange loss.

LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

	December 31, 2019	December 31, 2018
	(in thousands)	
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 181,133	$ 78,768
Short-term investments	66,379	89,321
Total liquid funds	$ 247,512	$ 168,089

As of December 31, 2019, we had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments totaling $247.5 million compared to $168.1 million as of December 31, 2018.

On December 9, 2019, we completed an underwritten public offering of 20,000,000 shares of common stock at a price of $6.25 per share before underwriting discounts and commissions, or the 2019 Offering. In connection with the 2019 Offering, we entered into an underwriting agreement, or the 2019 Underwriting Agreement, with Citigroup Global Markets Inc., Cowen and Company LLC, SVB Leerink LLC and Piper Jaffray & Co., or collectively the 2019 Underwriters, pursuant to which we granted to the 2019 Underwriters a 30-day option to purchase up to an additional 3,000,000 shares of our common stock, or the 2019 Overallotment. We completed the sale of 23,000,000 shares, inclusive of the 2019 Overallotment, to the 2019 Underwriters and that sale resulted in our receipt of aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $143.8 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses totaling approximately $8.9 million, which resulted in net proceeds of approximately $134.9 million.

On November 22, 2019, we and KKC entered into a stock purchase agreement, pursuant to which we sold an aggregate of 2,873,563 shares of our common stock at $6.96 per share for aggregate net proceeds of approximately $20.0 million, or the Private Placement. The Private Placement closed on November 25, 2019.

On August 9, 2018, we filed a prospectus supplement with the SEC pursuant to our previously filed shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-217441). The prospectus covers the offering, issuance and sale of up to $50.0 million of shares of common stock from time to time in “at the market” offerings pursuant to a Sales Agreement entered into with SVB Leerink (formerly known as Leerink Partners LLC), or Leerink, on August 9, 2018. As of December 31, 2019, no shares have been offered or issued or sold against the Sales Agreement with Leerink.

On May 25, 2018, we completed an underwritten public offering of 12,500,000 shares of common stock at a price of $4.00 per share before underwriting discounts and commissions, or the 2018 Offering. In connection with the 2018 Offering, we entered into an underwriting agreement, or the 2018 Underwriting Agreement, with Jefferies LLC and SVB Leerink (formerly known as Leerink Partners LLC), or together the 2018 Underwriters, pursuant to which we granted to the 2018 Underwriters a 30-day option to purchase up to an additional 1,875,000 shares of our common stock, or the 2018 Overallotment. We completed the sale of 14,375,000 shares, inclusive of the 2018 Overallotment, to the 2018 Underwriters, and that sale resulted in our receipt of aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $57.5 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses totaling approximately $3.7 million, which resulted in net proceeds of approximately $53.8 million.

On May 16, 2018, we entered into a loan and security agreement, or the Loan Agreement, with Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank. The Loan Agreement provides for a $50.0 million term loan facility with a maturity date of November 1, 2022. The full amount of the loan was funded on May 16, 2018. We received net proceeds from the loan of $49.3 million, after deducting the closing fee, legal expenses and issuance cost.

Our primary sources of cash have been from the sale and issuance of common stock, public offerings, private placement and convertible preferred stock, funds from our collaboration partnerships, and funds from our loan agreement. Our primary uses of cash are to fund operating expenses, primarily research and development expenditures. Cash used to fund operating expenses is impacted by the timing of when we pay these expenses, as reflected in the change in our outstanding accounts payable and accrued expenses.

We believe that our existing capital resources as of December 31, 2019 will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements for at least the next 12 months following our financial statement issuance date. We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could utilize our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. In particular, our operating plan can change, and we may require significant additional capital to fund our operations, including to support the development, commercialization and manufacturing efforts for tenapanor. We may seek to obtain such additional capital through debt financings, credit facilities, additional equity offerings and/or strategic collaborations. We currently have no unutilized credit facility or committed sources of capital, and there can be no assurances that such sources of capital will be available to us when needed or on acceptable terms. There are numerous risks and uncertainties associated with research, development and commercialization initiatives, and actual results could vary materially as a result of a number of factors, many of which are outside of our control. Our future capital requirements are difficult to forecast and will depend on many factors, including:

- the preparation and submission of an NDA with the FDA to request marketing authorization for tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis;
- our ability to identify a collaboration partner and negotiate acceptable terms for a collaboration partnership for the commercialization of tenapanor in IBS-C in the United States;
- our ability to successfully commercialize tenapanor for the control of serum phosphorus in CKD patients on dialysis, if approved, either alone or with one or more collaboration partners;
- the manufacturing costs of our product candidates, and the availability of one or more suppliers for our product candidates at reasonable costs, both for clinical and commercial supply;
- the selling and marketing costs associated with tenapanor, including the cost and timing of building our sales and marketing capabilities;
- our ability to maintain our existing collaboration partnerships and to establish additional collaboration partnerships, in-license/out-license, joint ventures or other similar arrangements and the financial terms of such agreements;
- the timing, receipt, and amount of sales of, or royalties on, tenapanor, if any;
- the sales price and the availability of adequate third-party reimbursement for tenapanor, if approved;
- the cash requirements of any future acquisitions or discovery of product candidates;
- the number and scope of preclinical and discovery programs that we decide to pursue or initiate, and any clinical trials we decide to pursue for other product candidates, including RDX013;
- the time and cost necessary to respond to technological and market developments;
- the costs of filing, prosecuting, maintaining, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights, including litigation costs and the outcome of such litigation, including costs of defending any claims of infringement brought by others in connection with the development, manufacture or commercialization of tenapanor or any of our product candidates; and
- the payment of interest and principal related to our loan and security agreement entered into with Solar Capital and Western Alliance Bank during May 2018.

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
	(in thousands)		
Cash used in operating activities	$ (76,484)	$ (70,274)	$ (65,190)
Cash provided by (used in) investing activities	23,373	(29,894)	65,290
Cash provided by financing activities	155,476	103,553	685
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	$ 102,365	$ 3,385	$ 785

Cash Flows from Operating Activities

Net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2019, was $76.5 million, as compared to $70.3 million of net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2018. The $6.2 million increase in net cash used in operating activities is attributable to:

- a $0.4 million decrease in cash received from collaboration partners during the year ended December 31, 2019 as compared to payments received during the year ended December 31, 2018. Specifically, we received a total of $14.1 million from collaboration partners during 2019, which was comprised of a $5.0 million upfront payment received in connection with the 2019 KKC Agreement, a $0.7 million upfront payment received in connection with the XuanZhu Agreement, a $5.0 million milestone payment received from KKC in connection with the 2017 KKC Agreement, a $3.0 million milestone payment received in connection with the Fosun Agreement and $0.4 million of manufacturing supply service revenue, as compared to a total of $14.5 million in cash payments received from collaboration partners during 2018;

- a $1.9 million decrease in payments made to AstraZeneca during 2019 in connection with the AZ Termination Agreement, as compared to payments made in 2018;

- a $0.4 million increase in cash R&D expenses (excluding working capital-related fluctuations) in 2019, as compared to 2018;

- a $0.4 million decrease in cash G&A expenses (excluding working capital-related fluctuations) in 2019, as compared to 2018;

- a $2.1 million increase in net cash interest payments in 2019, as compared to 2018;

- a $0.9 million decrease in cash paid for income taxes in 2019, as compared to 2018; and

- a $6.5 million net increase in cash used related to fluctuations in components of our non-revenue-related working capital in 2019, as compared to 2018, which was comprised of a $7.8 million decrease, a $1.9 million decrease and a $0.4 million decrease in cash provided by fluctuations in our non-payroll-related accruals and other current liabilities, lease liability and prepaid expenses and other current assets, respectively, partially offset by a $2.2 million increase and a $1.4 million increase of cash provided by fluctuations in our accrued compensation and benefits and accounts payable.

Net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2018, was $70.3 million, as compared to $65.2 million of net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2017. The $5.1 million increase in net cash used in operating activities is predominantly attributable to:

- a $15.5 million decrease in cash received from collaboration partners during the year ended December 31, 2018 as compared to payments received during the year ended December 31, 2017. Specifically, we received a total of $14.5 million from collaboration partners during 2018, which was comprised of a $12.0 million upfront payment received in connection with the Fosun Agreement, a $2.3 million upfront payment in

connection with the Knight Agreement and a $0.2 million of manufacturing supply service revenue, as compared to a total of $30.0 million in cash payments received from collaboration partners during 2017;

- a $3.1 million decrease in payments made to AstraZeneca during 2018 in connection with the AZ Termination Agreement, as compared to payments made in 2017;
- a $5.3 million decrease in cash R&D expenses (excluding working capital-related fluctuations) in 2018, as compared to 2017;
- a $3.2 million increase in net cash interest payments in 2018, as compared to 2017;
- a $1.1 million increase in cash paid for income taxes in 2018, as compared to 2017; and
- a $6.3 million net decrease in cash used related to fluctuations in components of our non-revenue-related working capital in 2018, as compared to 2017, which was comprised of a $2.7 million increase, a $3.1 million increase and a $1.1 million increase in cash provided by fluctuations in our prepaid expenses and other current assets, accounts payable and our non-payroll-related accruals and other current liabilities, respectively, partially offset by a $0.6 million decrease of cash provided by fluctuations in our accrued compensation and benefits.

Cash Flows from Investing Activities

Net cash provided by investing activities increased by $53.3 million during the year ended December 31, 2019, as compared to the year ended December 31, 2018. This increase was attributable to a $66.3 million decrease in purchases of short-term available-for-sale investments and a $1.2 million increase in sales and redemptions of investments, partially offset by a decrease in proceeds from the sale of short-term investments of $14.2 million.

Net cash used in investing activities increased by $95.2 million during the year ended December 31, 2018 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2017. This increase was attributable to an $85.0 million increase in purchases of short-term available-for-sales investments and a decrease of $17.1 million in sales and redemptions of investments, partially offset by a $4.9 million increase in proceeds from the sales of short-term investments and a $2.0 million decrease in the purchases of property and equipment.

Cash Flows from Financing Activities

Net cash provided by financing activities increased by $51.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2019, as compared to the year ended December 31, 2018. This increase was predominantly attributable to an $81.2 million increase in net proceeds received in connection with underwritten public offering initiatives and a $20.0 million increase in net proceeds received in connection with the Private Placement, partially offset by a net $49.3 million decrease in proceeds received in connection with a long-term loan borrowing.

Net cash provided by financing activities increased by $102.9 million during the year ended December 31, 2018, as compared to the year ended December 31, 2017. This increase was attributable to a $53.8 million increase in net proceeds received in connection with an underwritten equity offering and a $49.3 million increase in net proceeds received in connection with a long-term borrowing, partially offset by a $0.2 million decrease in proceeds received pursuant to the issuance of common stock under stock plans and the exercise of stock options.

OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS

As of December 31, 2019, we did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements as defined in Item 303(a)(4) of Regulation S-K as promulgated by the SEC.

JOBS ACT ACCOUNTING ELECTION

Up to December 31, 2019 we were an "emerging growth company," as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act. Under the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards issued subsequent to the enactment of the JOBS Act until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We had irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption from new or revised accounting standards, and, therefore, were subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not emerging growth companies. In addition, as an emerging growth company, we had reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We ceased to be an emerging growth company on January 1, 2020.

SMALLER REPORTING COMPANY

On June 28, 2018, the SEC adopted amendments that raise the thresholds in the smaller reporting company, or SRC, definition, whereby we were determined to qualify as an SRC. We elected to reflect that determination and avail ourselves with most of the SRC scaled disclosure accommodations in our filings subsequent to the adoption.

ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

Interest Rate Risk

We are subject to market risks, including interest rate fluctuation exposure through our investments, in the ordinary course of our business. However, the goals of our investment policy are the preservation of capital, fulfillment of liquidity needs and fiduciary control of cash. To achieve our goal of maximizing income without assuming significant market risk, we maintain our excess cash and cash equivalents in money market funds and short-term debt securities. Because of the short-term maturities of our cash equivalents, we do not believe that a decrease in interest rates would have any material negative impact on the fair value of our cash equivalents.

As of December 31, 2019, we had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments of $247.5 million, which consist of bank deposits and money market funds, as well as high quality fixed income instruments including corporate bonds, commercial paper, and asset-backed securities collateralized by non-mortgage consumer receivables. The credit rating of our short-term investments must be rated A-1/P-1, or better by Standard and Poor's and Moody's Investors Service. Asset-backed securities must be rated AAA/Aaa. Money Market funds must be rated AAAm/Aaa. Such interest-earning instruments carry a degree of interest rate risk. However, because our investments are high quality and short-term in duration, we believe that our exposure to interest rate risk is not significant and that a 10% movement in market interest rates would not have a significant impact on the total value of our portfolio, as noted above. We do not enter into investments for trading or speculative purposes.

We are subject to interest rate fluctuation exposure through our borrowings under the Loan Agreement and our investment in money market accounts which bear a variable interest rate. Borrowings under the Loan Agreement bear interest at a rate equal to one-month London Interbank Offered Rate, or LIBOR, plus 7.45% per annum. A hypothetical increase in one-month LIBOR of 100 basis points above the current one-month LIBOR rates would have increased our interest expense by approximately $0.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2019. As of December 31, 2019, we had an aggregate principal amount of $50.0 million outstanding pursuant to our Loan Agreement.

Foreign Currency Exchange Risk

The majority of our transactions are denominated in U.S. dollars. However, we do have certain transactions that are denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar, primarily Swiss francs and the euro, and we therefore are subject to foreign exchange risk. The fluctuation in the value of the U.S. dollar against other currencies affects the reported amounts of expenses, assets and liabilities associated with a limited number of manufacturing activities.

We do not use derivative financial instruments for speculative trading purposes, nor do we hedge foreign currency exchange rate exposure in a manner that entirely offsets the earnings effects of changes in foreign currency exchange rates. The counterparties to our forward foreign currency exchange contracts are creditworthy commercial banks, which minimizes the risk of counterparty nonperformance.

As of December 31, 2019, we had no open forward foreign currency exchange contracts.

ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

ARDELYX, INC.
INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of Ardelyx, Inc.

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of Ardelyx, Inc. (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2019 and 2018, the related statements of operations and comprehensive loss, stockholders’ equity, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2019, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “financial statements”). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2019 and 2018, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2019, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2019, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 Framework) and our report dated March 6, 2020 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Adoption of ASU No. 2014-09

As discussed in Note 2 to the financial statements, the Company changed its method for recognizing revenue as a result of the adoption of Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606), and the related amendments effective January 1, 2018.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company‘s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company‘s financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2009.

Redwood City, California
March 6, 2020

ARDELYX, INC.
BALANCE SHEETS
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	December 31, 2019	December 31, 2018
Assets		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	$ 181,133	$ 78,768
Short-term investments	66,379	89,321
Accounts receivable	—	85
Unbilled revenue	750	5,000
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	3,800	3,197
Total current assets	252,062	176,371
Property and equipment, net	3,436	5,611
Right-of-use assets	3,970	—
Other assets	314	1,350
Total assets	$ 259,782	$ 183,332
Liabilities and stockholders' equity		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	$ 2,187	$ 1,148
Accrued compensation and benefits	4,453	2,723
Uncharged license fees	—	1,000
Current portion of operating lease liability	2,608	—
Loan payable, current portion	1,183	—
Deferred revenue	4,541	—
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	7,248	12,857
Total current liabilities	22,220	17,728
Operating lease liability, net of current portion	2,076	—
Loan payable, net of current portion	48,831	49,209
Other long-term liabilities	—	582
Total liabilities	73,127	67,519
Commitments and contingencies (Note 17)		
Stockholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, $0.0001 par value; 5,000,000 shares authorized; no shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively.	—	—
Common stock, $0.0001 par value; 300,000,000 shares authorized; 88,817,741 and 62,516,627 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively.	9	6
Additional paid-in capital	647,078	481,357
Accumulated deficit	(460,452)	(365,512)
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	20	(38)
Total stockholders' equity	186,655	115,813
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	$ 259,782	$ 183,332

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

ARDELYX, INC.
STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS
(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Revenues:			
Licensing revenue	$ 4,500	$ 2,320	$ 42,000
Collaborative development revenue	459	—	—
Other revenue	322	287	—
Total revenues	5,281	2,607	42,000
Cost of revenue	600	466	8,400
Gross profit	4,681	2,141	33,600
Operating expenses:			
Research and development	71,677	69,373	75,484
General and administrative	24,267	23,715	23,231
Total operating expenses	95,944	93,088	98,715
Loss from operations	(91,263)	(90,947)	(65,115)
Interest expense	(5,726)	(3,534)	—
Other income, net	2,352	3,187	1,955
Loss before provision for income taxes	(94,637)	(91,294)	(63,160)
Provision for income taxes	303	4	1,179
Net loss	$ (94,940)	$ (91,298)	$ (64,339)
Net loss per common share, basic and diluted	$ (1.47)	$ (1.62)	$ (1.36)
Shares used in computing net loss per share - basic and diluted	64,478,066	56,219,919	47,435,331
Comprehensive loss:			
Net loss	$ (94,940)	$ (91,298)	$ (64,339)
Unrealized gains on available-for-sale securities	58	9	24
Comprehensive loss	$ (94,882)	$ (91,289)	$ (64,315)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

ARDELYX, INC.
STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY
(in thousands, except share amounts)

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Accumulated Other Comprehensive (Loss) Income	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balance as of December 31, 2016	47,309,422	$ 5	$ 407,092	$ (213,875)	$ (71)	$ 193,151
Issuance of common stock under employee stock purchase plan	99,343	—	623	—	—	623
Issuance of common stock for services	46,858	—	201	—	—	201
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options	35,759	—	62	—	—	62
Issuance of common stock upon vesting of restricted stock units	43,597	—	—	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation	—	—	9,590	—	—	9,590
Unrealized gains on available-for-sale securities	—	—	—	—	24	24
Net loss	—	—	—	(64,339)	—	(64,339)
Balance as of December 31, 2017	47,534,979	$ 5	$ 417,568	$ (278,214)	$ (47)	$ 139,312
Adoption of ASU No. 2014-09 on January 1, 2018	—	—	—	4,000	—	4,000
Issuance of common stock under employee stock purchase plan	120,959	—	491	—	—	491
Issuance of common stock for services	75,183	—	303	—	—	303
Issuance of common stock upon vesting of restricted stock units	410,506	—	—	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation	—	—	9,226	—	—	9,226
Unrealized gains on available-for-sale securities	—	—	—	—	9	9
Issuance of common stock upon underwritten public offering, net of issuance costs	14,375,000	1	53,769	—	—	53,770
Net loss	—	—	—	(91,298)	—	(91,298)
Balance as of December 31, 2018	62,516,627	$ 6	$ 481,357	$ (365,512)	$ (38)	$ 115,813
Issuance of common stock under employee stock purchase plan	160,744	—	396	—	—	396
Issuance of common stock for services	113,136	—	312	—	—	312
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options	68,062	—	178	—	—	178
Issuance of common stock upon vesting of restricted stock units	85,609	—	—	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation	—	—	9,936	—	—	9,936
Unrealized gains on available-for-sale securities	—	—	—	—	58	58
Issuance of common stock upon underwritten public offering, net of issuance costs	23,000,000	3	134,924	—	—	134,927
Issuance of common stock upon private placement, net of issuance costs	2,873,563	—	19,975	—	—	19,975
Net loss	—	—	—	(94,940)	—	(94,940)
Balance as of December 31, 2019	88,817,741	$ 9	$ 647,078	$ (460,452)	$ 20	$ 186,655

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

ARDELYX, INC.
STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(in thousands)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Operating activities			
Net loss	$ (94,940)	$ (91,298)	$ (64,339)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:			
Depreciation expense	2,501	2,678	2,639
Amortization of deferred financing costs	670	236	375
Amortization of deferred compensation for services	309	253	192
Amortization of (premium) discount on investment securities	(698)	(1,136)	11
Non-cash lease expense	1,839	—	—
Stock-based compensation	9,936	9,226	9,590
Change in derivative liabilities	436	111	—
Non-cash interest associated with debt discount accretion	478	303	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Unbilled revenue	4,250	—	—
Accounts receivable	85	10,711	(10,796)
Prepaid expenses and other assets	93	525	(2,148)
Accounts payable	39	(2,730)	(1,027)
Accrued compensation and benefits	1,730	(506)	68
Lease liabilities	(1,892)	—	—
Accrued and other liabilities	(5,861)	1,353	245
Deferred revenue	4,541	—	—
Net cash used in operating activities	(76,484)	(70,274)	(65,190)
Investing activities			
Proceeds from maturities of investments	124,369	138,600	133,701
Sales and redemptions of investments	2,000	850	17,957
Purchases of investments	(102,671)	(169,033)	(84,013)
Purchases of property and equipment	(325)	(311)	(2,355)
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities	23,373	(29,894)	65,290
Financing activities			
Proceeds from underwritten public offering, net of issuance costs	134,927	53,770	—
Proceeds from issuance of common stock upon private placement, net of issuance costs	19,975	—	—
Proceeds from issuance of common stock under stock plans	396	491	623
Issuance of common stock upon exercise of options	178	—	62
Proceeds from loan payable, net of issuance costs	—	49,292	—
Net cash provided by financing activities	155,476	103,553	685
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	102,365	3,385	785
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	78,768	75,383	74,598
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	$ 181,133	$ 78,768	$ 75,383
Supplementary disclosure of cash flow information:			
Income taxes paid	$ 2	$ 4	$ 3
Supplementary disclosure of non-cash activities:			
Right-of-use assets obtained in exchange for lease obligations	$ 5,810	$ —	$ —
Issuance of common stock for services	$ 312	$ 303	$ 201
Issuance of derivative in connection with issuance of loan payable	$ —	$ 546	$ —
Acquisition of property and equipment included in accounts payable and accrued liabilities	$ —	$ —	$ 55

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements.

ARDELYX, INC.
NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

1. ORGANIZATION AND BASIS OF PRESENTATION

Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company," "we," "us" or "our") is a specialized biopharmaceutical company focused on developing first-in-class medicines to improve treatment choices for people with cardiorenal diseases.

The Company operates in only one business segment, which is the research and development of biopharmaceutical products.

2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("U.S. GAAP").

Prior Period Errors

In connection with our review of our financial statements as of and for the six months ended June 30, 2019, we corrected errors related to the accounting for clinical trial accruals that had resulted in an overstatement of research and development expenses during the year ended December 31, 2018. Specifically, management concluded that the Company's research and development expenses recorded during the year ended December 31, 2018 had been overstated by $3.6 million and that the Company's accrued expenses and other current liabilities as of December 31, 2018 had been overstated by the same amount.

Management analyzed the potential impact of these errors in accordance with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission's ("SEC") Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 108, *Considering the Effects of Prior Year Misstatements when Quantifying Misstatements in Current Year Financial Statements*, and concluded that while the errors were significant to the Company's financial statements as of and for the six months ended June 30, 2019, a correction of the errors would not have been material to the full year results for 2019 and 2018 nor affect the trend of financial results. Accordingly, the Company reduced accrued and other liabilities by $3.6 million and recorded a cumulative adjustment of $3.6 million in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss to reduce research and development expenses in 2019.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and judgments that affect the amounts reported in the financial statements and accompanying notes. On an ongoing basis, management evaluates its estimates, including those related to recognition of revenue, clinical trial accruals, contract manufacturing accruals, fair value of assets and liabilities, income taxes and stock-based compensation. Management bases its estimates on historical experience and on various other market-specific and relevant assumptions that management believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could materially differ from those estimates.

Liquidity

As of December 31, 2019, the Company had cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments of approximately $247.5 million, which include net proceeds of approximately $134.9 million and approximately $20.0 million received in connection with the 2019 Offering and the Private Placement, respectively, as defined and discussed in Note 7. We believe our current available cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments will be sufficient to fund

our planned expenditures and meet the Company's obligations for at least 12 months following March 6, 2020, which is the date that the financial statements are being issued.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity date of 90 days or less on the date of purchase to be cash equivalents.

Short-Term Investments

Short-term investments consist of debt securities classified as available-for-sale and have maturities greater than 90 days, but less than one year, from the date of acquisition. Short-term investments are carried at fair value based upon quoted market prices. Unrealized gains and losses on available-for-sale securities are excluded from earnings and are reported as a component of accumulated other comprehensive loss. The cost of available-for-sale securities sold is based on the specific-identification method.

Concentration of Credit Risk

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to significant concentrations of credit risk consist primarily of cash, cash equivalents, short-term investments and accounts receivable. The Company is exposed to credit risks in the event of default by the counterparties to the extent of the amount recorded in its balance sheet. Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments are invested through banks and other financial institutions in the United States.

Accounts Receivable

An allowance for doubtful accounts will be recorded based on a combination of historical experience, aging analysis, and information on specific accounts. Account balances will be written off against the allowance after all means of collection have been exhausted and the potential for recovery is considered remote. No provision was made for doubtful accounts as of December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017.

Foreign Currency and Forward Contracts

The Company manages its foreign currency exposures with the use of foreign currency purchases as well as currency spot and forward contracts. The Company primarily conducts its business in U.S. dollars; however, a portion of the Company's expense and capital activities are transacted in foreign currencies which are subject to exchange rate fluctuations that can affect cash or earnings. The Company has been in a loss position and therefore its primary objective is to conserve and manage cash. There are generally two methods by which the Company manages the cash flow risk of foreign exchange fluctuations when a contract is signed (i) it can purchase the foreign funds, in full or in part, upon the execution of the contract, or (ii) it can obtain the right to purchase such funds, in full or in part, at the execution of the contract, i.e., obtain a forward contract from an appropriate bank, that can be exercised to obtain the currency of interest at a particular point in time. The derivative instruments that the Company uses to hedge the exposure shall generally not be designated as cash flow hedges, and as a result, changes in their fair value will be recorded in other income (expense), net, in the Company's statements of operations and comprehensive loss. The fair values of forward foreign currency exchange contracts are estimated using current exchange rates and interest rates and the current creditworthiness of the counterparties is taken into consideration.

Property and Equipment

Property and equipment are stated at cost, less accumulated depreciation and amortization. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the respective assets, with ranges generally from three to five years. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the lesser of the estimated useful lives or the related remaining lease term.

Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

The carrying value of long-lived assets, including property and equipment, are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset may not be recoverable. An impairment loss is recognized when the total of estimated future undiscounted cash flows, expected to result from the use of the asset and its eventual disposition, are less than the asset's carrying amount. Impairment, if any, would be assessed using discounted cash flows or other appropriate measures of fair value. For the years ending December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017 there have been no impairment losses.

Income Taxes

The Company uses the asset and liability method of accounting for income taxes. Under this method, deferred tax assets and liabilities are determined based on the differences between the financial reporting and the tax bases of assets and liabilities and are measured using the enacted tax rates and laws that will be in effect when the differences are expected to reverse. A valuation allowance is provided when it is more likely than not that some portion or all of a deferred tax asset will not be realized.

Revenue Recognition

On January 1, 2018 the Company adopted the Financial Accounting Standards Board's ("FASB") Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606) and related amendments* ("ASC 606"), on a modified retrospective basis, which resulted in an adjustment to the opening accumulated deficit balance on the adoption date. As a result of the adoption of the new standard, on January 1, 2018, the Company recorded the following: (i) unbilled revenue under current assets of $5.0 million representing a future receivable related to the first milestone under the Company's license agreement with Kyowa Kirin Co., Ltd. (formerly known as Kyowa Hakko Kirin Co., Ltd, or KHK) ("KKC"), which was subsequently achieved by KKC and collected in February 2019, thereby reducing the unbilled revenue balance to zero, (ii) uncharged license fees under current liabilities of $1.0 million representing the corresponding future payable related to AstraZeneca AB, or AstraZeneca, in accordance with the Company's termination agreement with AstraZeneca, which, upon KKC achieving the milestone, was reclassified to accounts payable and subsequently paid to AstraZeneca during the second quarter of 2019, and (iii) a related decrease in accumulated deficit of approximately $4.0 million as the new standard permitted revenue from milestones that possess certain criteria to be recognized earlier and also contained different recognition criteria related to milestones than under the previous accounting standard.

The Company generates revenue primarily from research and collaboration and license agreements with customers. Goods and services in the agreements may include the grant of licenses for the use of the Company's technology, the provision of services associated with the research and development of product candidates, manufacturing services, and participation in joint steering committees. The terms of these arrangements typically include payment to the Company of one or more of the following: non-refundable, up-front license fees; research, development, regulatory and commercial milestone payments; reimbursement of research and development services; option payments; reimbursement of certain costs; payments for manufacturing supply services; and future royalties on net sales of licensed products.

When two or more contracts are entered into with the same customer at or near the same time, the Company evaluates the contracts to determine whether the contracts should be accounted for as a single arrangement. Contracts are combined and accounted for as a single arrangement if one or more of the following criteria are met: (i) the contracts are negotiated as a package with a single commercial objective; (ii) the amount of consideration to be paid in one contract depends on the price or performance of the other contract; or (iii) the goods or services promised in the contracts (or some goods or services promised in each of the contracts) are a single performance obligation.

In determining the appropriate amount of revenue to be recognized as the Company fulfills its obligations under each of its agreements, management performs the following steps: (i) identification of the promised goods or services in the contract; (ii) determination of whether the promised goods or services are performance obligations including whether they are distinct in the context of the contract; (iii) measurement of the transaction price, including the constraints on

variable consideration; (iv) allocation of the transaction price to the performance obligations; and (v) recognition of revenue when (or as) the Company satisfies each performance obligation. As part of the accounting for contracts with customers, the Company develops assumptions that require judgment to determine whether promised goods and services represent distinct performance obligations and the standalone selling price for each performance obligation identified in the contract. This evaluation is subjective and requires the Company to make judgments about the promised goods and services and whether those goods and services are separable from other aspects of the contract. Further, determining the standalone selling price for performance obligations requires significant judgment, and when an observable price of a promised good or service is not readily available, the Company considers relevant assumptions to estimate the standalone selling price, including, as applicable, market conditions, development timelines, probabilities of technical and regulatory success, reimbursement rates for personnel costs, forecasted revenues, potential limitations to the selling price of the product and discount rates.

The Company applies judgment in determining whether a combined performance obligation is satisfied at a point in time or over time, and, if over time, concluding upon the appropriate method of measuring progress to be applied for purposes of recognizing revenue. The Company evaluates the measure of progress each reporting period and, as estimates related to the measure of progress change, related revenue recognition is adjusted accordingly. Changes in the Company's estimated measure of progress are accounted for prospectively as a change in accounting estimate. The Company recognizes collaboration revenue by measuring the progress toward complete satisfaction of the performance obligation using an input measure. In order to recognize revenue over the research and development period, the Company measures actual costs incurred to date compared to the overall total expected costs to satisfy the performance obligation. Revenues are recognized as the program costs are incurred. The Company will re-evaluate the estimate of expected costs to satisfy the performance obligation each reporting period and make adjustments for any significant changes.

Amounts received prior to satisfying the revenue recognition criteria are recorded as contract liabilities in the Company's balance sheets. If the related performance obligation is expected to be satisfied within the next twelve months this will be classified in current liabilities. Amounts recognized as revenue prior to receipt are recorded as contract assets in the Company's balance sheets. If the Company expects to have an unconditional right to receive the consideration in the next twelve months, this will be classified in current assets. A net contract asset or liability is presented for each contract with a customer.

Milestone Payments: At the inception of each arrangement that includes development milestone payments, the Company evaluates whether the milestones are considered probable of being reached and estimates the amount to be included in the transaction price using the most likely amount method. Amounts of variable consideration are included in the transaction price to the extent that it is probable that a significant reversal in the amount of cumulative revenue recognized will not occur and when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is subsequently resolved. Milestone payments that are not within the control of the Company or the licensee, such as regulatory approvals, are not considered probable of being achieved until those approvals are received. The transaction price is then allocated to each performance obligation on a relative standalone selling price basis, for which the Company recognizes revenue as or when the performance obligations under the contract are satisfied. At the end of each subsequent reporting period, the Company re-evaluates the probability of achievement of such development milestones and any related constraints, and if necessary, adjusts its estimate of the overall transaction price. Any such adjustments are recorded on a cumulative catch-up basis, which would affect earnings in the period of adjustment.

Manufacturing supply services: Arrangements that include a promise for future supply of drug substance or drug product for either clinical development or commercial supply at the customer's discretion are generally considered as options. The Company assess if these options provide a material right to the licensee and if so, they are accounted for as separate performance obligations. If the Company is entitled to additional payments when the customer exercises these options, any payments are recorded in other revenues when the customer obtains control of the goods, which is upon delivery.

Royalties: For arrangements that include sales-based royalties, including milestone payments based on the level of sales, and where the license is deemed to be the predominant item to which the royalties relate, the Company recognizes revenue at the later of (i) when the related sales occur, or (ii) when the performance obligation to which some

or all of the royalty has been allocated has been satisfied (or partially satisfied). To date, the Company has not recognized any royalty revenue resulting from any of its licensing arrangements.

Licenses of intellectual property: If a license granted to a customer to use the Company's intellectual property is determined to be distinct from the other performance obligations identified in the arrangement, the Company recognizes revenue from consideration allocated to the license when the license is transferred to the licensee and the licensee is able to use and benefit from the license. For licenses that are bundled with other promises, the Company applies judgment to assess the nature of the combined performance obligation to determine whether the combined performance obligation is satisfied over time or at a point in time and, if over time, to conclude upon the appropriate method of measuring progress for purposes of recognizing revenue related to consideration allocated to the performance obligation.

Options: Customer options, such as options granted to allow a licensee to choose to research, develop and commercialize licensed compounds are evaluated at contract inception in order to determine whether those options provide a material right (i.e., an optional good or service offered for free or at a discount) to the customer. If the customer options represent a material right, the material right is treated as a separate performance obligation at the outset of the arrangement. The Company allocates the transaction price to material rights based on the standalone selling price, and revenue is recognized when or as the future goods or services are transferred or when the option expires. Customer options that are not material rights do not give rise to a separate performance obligation, and as such, the additional consideration that would result from a customer exercising an option in the future is not included in the transaction price for the current contract. Instead, the option is deemed a marketing offer, and additional option fee payments are recognized or being recognized as revenue when the licensee exercises the option. The exercise of an option that does not represent a material right is treated as a separate contract for accounting purposes.

Contract costs: The Company recognizes as an asset the incremental costs of obtaining a contract with a customer if the costs are expected to be recovered. The Company has elected a practical expedient wherein it recognizes the incremental costs of obtaining a contract as an expense when incurred if the amortization period of the asset that it otherwise would have recognized is one year or less. To date, the Company has not incurred any material incremental costs of obtaining a contract with a customer.

Contract modifications: Contract modifications, defined as changes in the scope or price (or both) of a contract that are approved by the parties to the contract, such as a contract amendment, exist when the parties to a contract approve a modification that either creates new or changes existing enforceable rights and obligations of the parties to the contract. Depending on facts and circumstances, the Company accounts for a contract modification as one of the following: (i) a separate contract; (ii) a termination of the existing contract and a creation of a new contract; or (iii) a combination of the preceding treatments. A contract modification is accounted for as a separate contract if the scope of the contract increases because of the addition of promised goods or services that are distinct and the price of the contract increases by an amount of consideration that reflects the Company's standalone selling prices of the additional promised goods or services. When a contract modification is not considered a separate contract and the remaining goods or services are distinct from the goods or services transferred on or before the date of the contract modification, the Company accounts for the contract modification as a termination of the existing contract and a creation of a new contract. When a contract modification is not considered a separate contract and the remaining goods or services are not distinct, the Company accounts for the contract modification as an add-on to the existing contract and as an adjustment to revenue on a cumulative catch-up basis.

The Company receives payments from its licensees as established in each contract. Upfront payments and fees are recorded as deferred revenue upon receipt or when due and may require deferral of revenue recognition to a future period until the Company performs its obligations under these arrangements. Where applicable, amounts are recorded as unbilled revenue when the Company's right to consideration is unconditional. The Company does not assess whether a contract with a customer has a significant financing component if the expectation at contract inception is such that the period between payment by the licensees and the transfer of the promised goods or services to the licensees will be one year or less.

Research and Development Costs

Research and development costs are charged to expense as incurred and consist of costs incurred to further the Company's research and development activities and include salaries and related employee benefits, costs associated with clinical trials, costs related to pre-commercialization manufacturing activities such as manufacturing process validation activities and the manufacturing of clinical drug supply, nonclinical research and development activities, regulatory activities, research-related overhead expenses and fees paid to external service providers and contract research and manufacturing organizations that conduct certain research and development activities on behalf of the Company.

Accrued Research and Development Expenses

The Company is required to estimate its accrued expenses at the end of each reporting period. This process involves reviewing open contracts and purchase orders, communicating with Company personnel to identify services that have been performed on the Company's behalf and estimating the level of service performed and the associated cost incurred for the service when the Company has not yet been invoiced or otherwise notified of the actual costs. The majority of the Company's service providers submit invoices in arrears for services performed or when contractual milestones are met. The Company makes estimates of its accrued expenses as of each balance sheet date in the financial statements based on facts and circumstances known to the Company at that time. The Company periodically confirms the accuracy of its estimates with the service providers and makes adjustments if necessary. Examples of estimated accrued research and development expenses include fees paid to:

- contract research organizations, or CROs, in connection with clinical studies;
- investigative sites in connection with clinical studies;
- vendors related to product manufacturing, development and distribution of clinical supplies; and
- vendors in connection with preclinical development activities.

The Company records expenses related to clinical studies and manufacturing development activities based on its estimates of the services received and efforts expended pursuant to contracts with multiple CROs and manufacturing vendors that conduct and manage these activities on the Company's behalf. The financial terms of these agreements are subject to negotiation, vary from contract to contract, and may result in uneven payment flows. There may be instances in which payments made to the Company's vendors will exceed the level of services provided and result in a prepayment of the expense. Payments under some of these contracts depend on factors such as the successful enrollment of subjects and the completion of clinical trial milestones. In accruing service fees, the Company estimates the time period over which services will be performed, enrollment of subjects, number of sites activated and the level of effort to be expended in each period. If the actual timing of the performance of services or the level of effort varies from the Company's estimate, the Company will adjust the accrued or prepaid expense balance accordingly.

Stock-Based Compensation

The Company recognizes compensation expense for all stock-based payment awards made to employees, nonemployees and directors based on estimated fair values. For employee and nonemployee stock options, the Company determines the grant date fair value of the awards using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and generally recognizes the fair value as stock-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the vesting period of the respective awards. For restricted stock and performance-based restricted stock, to the extent they are probable, the compensation cost for these awards is based on the closing price of the Company's common stock on the date of grant and recognized as compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period. Stock-based compensation expense is based on the value of the portion of stock-based payment awards that is ultimately expected to vest. As such, the Company's stock-based compensation is reduced for the estimated forfeitures at the date of grant and revised, if necessary, in subsequent periods if actual forfeitures differ from those estimates.

Derivatives and Hedging Activities

The Company accounts for its derivative instruments as either assets or liabilities on the balance sheet and measures them at fair value. Derivatives are adjusted to fair value through other income (expense), net in the statements of operations and comprehensive loss.

Leases

The Company determines if an arrangement is a lease at the inception of the arrangement. Operating leases are included in right-of-use assets, current portion of operating lease liability, and operating lease liability, net of current portion in our balance sheets. Right-of-use assets represent the Company's right to use an underlying asset for the lease term and lease liabilities represent our obligation to make lease payments arising from the lease. Operating lease right-of-use assets and liabilities are recognized at the lease commencement date based on the present value of lease payments over the lease term. In determining the present value of lease payments, the Company uses its incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at the lease commencement date. The operating lease right-of-use assets also include any lease payments made and exclude lease incentives. The Company's lease terms may include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise any such options. Lease expense is recognized on a straight-line basis over the expected lease term. The Company has elected not to separate lease and non-lease components, such as common area maintenance charges, and instead it accounts for these as a single lease component.

Comprehensive Loss

Comprehensive loss is composed of two components: net loss and other comprehensive income (loss). Other comprehensive income (loss) refers to gains and losses that are recorded as an element of stockholders' equity but are excluded from net loss.

Net Loss per Share

Basic net loss per common share is calculated by dividing the net loss by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period, without consideration of potential common shares. Diluted net loss per common share in the periods presented is the same as basic net loss per common share, since the effects of potentially dilutive securities are antidilutive due to the net loss for all periods presented.

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

New Accounting Pronouncements - Recently Adopted

On January 1, 2019, the Company adopted the FASB's Accounting Standards Update ("ASU"), No. 2018-07, *Compensation – Stock Compensation*, which simplifies the accounting for share-based payments to non-employees by aligning it with the accounting guidance for share-based payments for employees. This ASU expands the scope of *Topic 718, Compensation – Stock Compensation*, which currently only includes share-based payments issued to employees, to also include share-based payments issued to non-employees for goods and services. Consequently, the accounting for share-based payments to non-employees and employees is substantially aligned. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)* ("ASU 2016-02"), as amended, which generally requires lessees to recognize operating and financing lease liabilities and corresponding right-of-use assets on the balance sheet and to provide enhanced disclosures surrounding the amount, timing and uncertainty of cash flows arising from leasing arrangements. In July 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-11, *Leases (Topic 842): Targeted Improvements* ("ASU 2018-11"). In issuing ASU 2018-11, the FASB permitted another transition method for ASU 2016-02, which allows the transition to the new lease standard by recognizing a cumulative-effect adjustment to the opening balance of retained earnings in the period of adoption. The Company elected the transition method and package of practical expedients permitted under the transition guidance, which allowed the Company to carryforward its historical lease classification, its assessment on whether a contract is or contains a lease, and its initial direct costs for

any leases that exist prior to adoption of the new standard. The Company also elected to combine lease and non-lease components and to keep leases with an initial term of 12 months or less off the balance sheet and recognize the associated lease payments in the statements of operations on a straight-line basis over the lease term. We adopted the ASU on January 1, 2019 using a modified retrospective approach and recorded a right-of-use asset and a corresponding lease liability to account for our facility lease as a cumulative-effect adjustment to the opening balance of accrued expense and other current liabilities and other long-term liabilities in the period of adoption.

Impact of Adoption

The Company, on adopting Topic 842 on January 1, 2019, used the modified retrospective approach with the cumulative effect of initially applying the standard as an adjustment to the opening balance of accrued and other liabilities and other long-term liabilities. The following adjustments were recorded in the Company's balance sheet on January 1, 2019 (in thousands):

	December 31, 2018	Adjustments Due to Topic 842	January 1, 2019
Right-of-use assets	$ —	$ 5,810	$ 5,810
Current portion of operating lease liability	$ —	$ 1,892	$ 1,892
Operating lease liability, net of current portion	$ —	$ 4,684	$ 4,684
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	$ 12,857	$ (184)	$ 12,673
Other long-term liabilities	$ 582	$ (582)	$ —

As a result of adopting Topic 842 on January 1, 2019, the following financial statement line items in the Company's balance sheet at December 31, 2019 and the statement of operations and comprehensive loss for the year ended December 31, 2019 were affected compared to as would have been recorded under ASC 840, *Leases (Topic 840)*, (in thousands):

	December 31, 2019		
	As Reported under Topic 842	Under Topic 840	Effect of Change
Right-of-use assets	$ 3,970	$ —	$ 3,970
Current portion of operating lease liability	$ 2,608	$ —	$ 2,608
Operating lease liability, net of current portion	$ 2,076	$ —	$ 2,076
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	$ 7,248	$ 7,571	$ (323)
Other long-term liabilities	$ —	$ 258	$ (258)

	Year Ended December 31, 2019		
	As Reported under Topic 842	Under Topic 840	Effect of Change
Operating expenses:			
Research and development related to leases	$ 2,070	$ 1,962	$ 108
General and administrative related to leases	522	498	24
Total	$ 2,592	$ 2,460	$ 132

New Accounting Pronouncements – Adoption on January 1, 2020

In November 2018, the FASB issued ASU 2018-18, *Collaborative Arrangements (Topic 808): Clarifying the Interaction between Topic 808 and Topic 606*, which clarifies that certain transactions between collaborative arrangement participants should be accounted for as revenue under ASC 606 when the collaborative arrangement

participant is a customer. For the Company, the amendment is effective January 1, 2020. Management does not expect that adoption of this guidance will have a significant impact on the Company's financial statements.

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-13, *Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820): Disclosure Framework—Changes to the Disclosure Requirements for Fair Value Measurement*. ASU 2018-13 considers cost and benefits, and removes, modifies and adds disclosure requirements in Topic 820. The amendments on changes in unrealized gains and losses, the range and weighted average of significant unobservable inputs used to develop Level 3 fair value measurements, and the narrative description of measurement uncertainty is to be applied prospectively for only the most recent interim or annual period presented in the initial fiscal year of adoption. All other amendments are to be applied retrospectively to all periods presented. ASU 2018-13 is effective for the Company for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, including interim periods within that fiscal year and early adoption was permitted. Management does not expect that adoption of this guidance will have a significant impact on the Company's financial statements.

New Accounting Pronouncements Not Yet Adopted

In December 2019, the FASB issued ASU 2019-12 *Income Taxes (Topic 740): Simplifying the Accounting for Income Taxes*, which removes certain exceptions for intra period allocations, recognizing deferred taxes for investments and calculating income taxes in interim periods. This ASU also adds guidance to reduce complexity in certain areas, including recognizing deferred taxes for tax goodwill and allocating taxes to members of a consolidated group. The guidance is effective for the Company for fiscal years, and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2020, with early adoption permitted. Management is currently assessing the impact of this standard on the Company's financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments - Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments*, an amendment which modifies the measurement and recognition of credit losses for most financial assets and certain other instruments. The amendment updates the guidance for measuring and recording credit losses on financial assets measured at amortized cost by replacing the "incurred loss" model with an "expected loss" model. Accordingly, these financial assets will be presented at the net amount expected to be collected. The amendment also requires that credit losses related to available-for-sale debt securities be recorded as an allowance through net income rather than reducing the carrying amount under the current, other-than-temporary-impairment model. For smaller reporting companies the guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2022, including interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. Management is currently assessing the impact of this standard on the Company's financial statements.

3. CASH, CASH EQUIVALENTS AND SHORT-TERM INVESTMENTS

Securities classified as cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments as of December 31, 2019 and December 31, 2018 are summarized below (in thousands). Estimated fair value is based on quoted market prices for these investments.

	December 31, 2019			
		Gross Unrealized		
	Amortized Cost	Gains	Losses	Fair Value
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	$ 3,124	$ —	$ —	$ 3,124
Money market funds	147,208	—	—	147,208
Corporate bonds	11,441	—	—	11,441
Commercial paper	19,357	3	—	19,360
Total cash and cash equivalents	$ 181,130	$ 3	$ —	$ 181,133
Short-term investments				
Corporate bonds	$ 21,690	$ 6	$ (3)	$ 21,693
Commercial paper	36,667	14	—	36,681
Asset-backed securities	8,005	—	—	8,005
Total short-term investments	$ 66,362	$ 20	$ (3)	$ 66,379
Total cash equivalents and investments	$ 247,492	$ 23	$ (3)	$ 247,512

	December 31, 2018			
		Gross Unrealized		
	Amortized Cost	Gains	Losses	Fair Value
Cash and cash equivalents:				
Cash	$ 3,733	$ —	$ —	$ 3,733
Money market funds	73,238	—	—	73,238
Commercial paper	1,797	—	—	1,797
Total cash and cash equivalents	$ 78,768	$ —	$ —	$ 78,768
Short-term investments				
U.S. treasury securities	$ 3,996	$ —	$ —	$ 3,996
Corporate bonds	34,611	—	(21)	34,590
Commercial paper	41,371	—	(14)	41,357
Asset-backed securities	9,381	—	(3)	9,378
Total short-term investments	$ 89,359	$ —	$ (38)	$ 89,321
Total cash equivalents and investments	$ 168,127	$ —	$ (38)	$ 168,089

Cash equivalents consist of money market funds and other debt securities with original maturities of three months or less at the time of purchase, and the carrying amount is a reasonable approximation of fair value. The Company invests its cash in high quality securities of financial and commercial institutions. These securities are carried at fair value, which is based on readily available market information, with unrealized gains and losses included in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) within stockholders' equity on the Company's balance sheets. The Company uses the specific identification method to determine the amount of realized gains or losses on sales of marketable securities. Realized gains or losses have been insignificant and are included in other income (expense), net, in the statement of operations.

All available-for-sale securities held as of December 31, 2019 and 2018, had contractual maturities of less than one year. The Company's available-for-sale securities are subject to a periodic impairment review. The Company considers a debt security to be impaired when its fair value is less than its carrying cost, in which case the Company would further review the investment to determine whether it is other-than-temporarily impaired. When the Company evaluates an investment for other-than-temporary impairment, the Company reviews factors such as the length of time and extent to which fair value has been below cost basis, the financial condition of the issuer and any changes thereto,

intent to sell, and whether it is more likely than not the Company will be required to sell the investment before the recovery of its cost basis. If an investment is other-than-temporarily impaired, the Company writes it down through the statement of operations to its fair value and establishes that value as a new cost basis for the investment. The Company did not identify any of its available-for-sale securities as other-than-temporarily impaired in any of the periods presented. As of December 31, 2019 and 2018, no investment was in a continuous unrealized loss position for more than one year and the Company believes that it is more likely than not that the investments will be held until maturity or a forecasted recovery of fair value.

4. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS

Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs.

The three-level hierarchy for the inputs to valuation techniques is briefly summarized as follows:

Level 1 – Valuations are based on quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities and readily accessible by the Company at the reporting date. Examples of assets and liabilities utilizing Level 1 inputs are certain money market funds, U.S. treasuries and trading securities with quoted prices on active markets.

Level 2 – Valuations based on inputs other than Level 1 that are observable, either directly or indirectly, such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities. Examples of assets and liabilities utilizing Level 2 inputs are corporate bonds, commercial paper, certificates of deposit and over-the-counter derivatives.

Level 3 – Valuations based on unobservable inputs in which there is little or no market data, which require the Company to develop its own assumptions.

The following table sets forth the fair value of the Company's financial assets and liabilities measured on a recurring basis by level within the fair value hierarchy (in thousands):

	December 31, 2019			
	Total Fair Value	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Assets:				
Money market funds	$ 147,208	$ 147,208	$ —	$ —
Corporate bonds	33,134	—	33,134	—
Commercial paper	56,041	—	56,041	—
Asset-backed securities	8,005	—	8,005	—
Total	$ 244,388	$ 147,208	$ 97,180	$ —
Liabilities:				
Derivative liability for Exit Fee	$ 969	$ —	$ —	$ 969
Total	$ 969	$ —	$ —	$ 969

	December 31, 2018			
	Total Fair Value	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Assets:				
Money market funds	$ 73,238	$ 73,238	$ —	$ —
U.S. treasury securities	3,996	3,996	—	—
Corporate bonds	34,590	—	34,590	—
Commercial paper	43,154	—	43,154	—
Asset-backed securities	9,378	—	9,378	—
Total	$ 164,356	$ 77,234	$ 87,122	$ —
Liabilities:				
Derivative liability for exit fee	$ 533	$ —	$ —	$ 533
Foreign currency derivative contracts	52	—	52	—
Total	$ 585	$ —	$ 52	$ 533

Where quoted prices are available in an active market, securities are classified as Level 1. The Company classifies money market funds, U.S. treasury securities and U.S. treasury notes as Level 1. When quoted market prices are not available for the specific security, the Company estimates fair value by using benchmark yields, reported trades, broker/dealer quotes and issuer spreads. The Company classifies corporate bonds, commercial paper, asset-backed securities and foreign currency derivative contracts as Level 2. In certain cases, where there is limited activity or less transparency around inputs to valuation, securities are classified as Level 3. There were no transfers between Level 1 and Level 2 during the periods presented.

In May 2018, in connection with entering into the Loan Agreement, as defined and discussed in Note 6, the Company entered into an agreement pursuant to which the Company agreed to pay $1.5 million in cash, or the Exit Fee, upon any change of control transaction in respect of the Company or if the Company obtains both (i) FDA approval of tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in CKD patients on dialysis and (ii) FDA approval of tenapanor for the treatment of patients with irritable bowel syndrome with constipation, or IBS-C, which was obtained on September 12, 2019 when the FDA approved IBSRELA® (tenapanor), a 50 mg, twice daily oral pill for the treatment of IBS-C, in adults (the “Exit Fee Agreement”). Notwithstanding the prepayment or termination of the Term Loan, the Company’s obligation to pay the Exit Fee will expire on May 16, 2028. The Company concluded that the Exit Fee is a freestanding derivative which should be accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis. The estimated fair value of the Exit Fee is recorded as a derivative liability and included in accrued expense and other current liabilities on the accompanying balance sheets.

The fair value of the derivative liability was determined using a discounted cash flow analysis and is classified as a Level 3 measurement within the fair value hierarchy since the Company’s valuation utilized significant unobservable inputs. Specifically, the key assumptions included in the calculation of the estimated fair value of the derivative instrument include: i) the Company’s estimates of both the probability and timing of a potential $1.5 million payment to Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank as a result of the FDA approvals, and ii) a discount rate which was derived from the Company's estimated cost of debt, adjusted with current LIBOR. Generally, increases or decreases in the probability of occurrence would result in a directionally similar impact in the fair value measurement of the derivative instrument and it is estimated that a 10% increase (decrease) in the probability of occurrence would result in a fair value fluctuation of approximately $0.1 million.

Changes in the fair value of recurring measurements included in Level 3 of the fair value hierarchy are presented as other income (expense), net in the Company's statements of operations and were as follows for the year ended December 31, 2019 (in thousands):

	Estimated Fair Value of Derivative Liability
Balance of Level 3 Liabilities at December 31, 2017	$ —
Initial estimated fair value of derivative liability for Exit Fee in May 2018	546
Change in estimated fair value of derivative liability for Exit Fee	(13)
Balance of Level 3 Liabilities at December 31, 2018	533
Change in estimated fair value of derivative liability for Exit Fee	436
Balance of Level 3 Liabilities at December 31, 2019	$ 969

The carrying amounts reflected in the balance sheets for cash equivalents, short-term investments, accounts receivable, prepaid expenses and other current assets, accounts payable and accrued expenses approximate their fair values at both December 31, 2019 and December 31, 2018, due to their short-term nature.

5. DERIVATIVE FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Exposure

The Company has used forward foreign currency exchange contracts to secure a foreign currency exchange rate when a contract is executed involving payment in a foreign currency in order to minimize cash flow exposure to fluctuating exchange rates. Such exposure results from portions of the Company’s forecasted cash outflows being denominated in currencies other than the U.S. dollar, primarily the Swiss franc, or CHF, and the euro, or EUR. The derivative instruments the Company uses to hedge this exposure are not designated as cash flow hedges, and as a result, changes in the fair value of the derivative instruments are recorded in other income (expense), net, in the Company's statements of operations and comprehensive loss. The fair values of forward foreign currency exchange contracts are estimated using current exchange rates and interest rates and take into consideration the current creditworthiness of the counterparties.

In March 2019, the Company settled its forward foreign currency exchange contract in the aggregate notional amount of CHF 3.3 million. As of December 31, 2019, the Company has no open forward foreign currency exchange contracts. The net loss associated with the Company's derivative instruments of $60,558 and $124,194 for the years ended December 31, 2019 and 2018, respectively, is recognized in other income (expense), net, in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss. There were no expenses related to the Company’s derivative instruments during the year ended December 31, 2017.

6. BORROWINGS

Solar Capital and Western Alliance Bank Loan Agreement

On May 16, 2018, the Company entered into a loan and security agreement, or the Loan Agreement, with Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank, or collectively the Lenders. The Loan Agreement provides for a $50.0 million term loan facility with a maturity date of November 1, 2022, or the Term Loan. The full amount of the loan was funded on May 16, 2018. The Company received net proceeds from the loan of approximately $49.3 million, after deducting the closing fee, legal expenses and issuance costs.

Borrowings under the Term Loan bear interest at a floating per annum rate equal to 7.45% plus the one-month London Inter-bank Offered Rate, or LIBOR. The Company is permitted to make interest-only payments on the Term Loan through June 1, 2020, unless the Company achieves its primary endpoint in the Phase 3 study of tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in end-stage renal disease patients on dialysis, prior to June 1, 2020, in which case the Company is permitted to make interest-only payments on the Term Loan through December 1, 2020. On December 3, 2019, the Company reported positive topline results for PHREEDOM, a long-term Phase 3 study evaluating the efficacy

and safety of tenapanor as monotherapy for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia in patients with CKD on dialysis. The Lenders are in agreement that these positive data from the Phase 3 PHREEDOM study achieve the "Phase 3 Endpoint" required by the Loan Agreement to extend the interest only period by six months to December 1, 2020. Accordingly, beginning on December 1, 2020 through the maturity date, the Company will be required to make monthly payments of interest plus repayment of the Term Loan in consecutive equal monthly installments of principal. The Company paid a closing fee of 1% of the Term Loan, or $0.5 million, upon the closing of the Term Loan. The Company is obligated to pay a final fee equal to 3.95% of the Term Loan upon the earliest to occur of the maturity date, the acceleration of the Term Loan, the prepayment or repayment of the Term Loan or the termination of the Loan Agreement. The Company may voluntarily prepay the outstanding Term Loan, subject to a prepayment premium of (i) 3% of the principal amount of the Term Loan if prepaid prior to or on the first anniversary of the Closing Date, (ii) 2% of the principal amount of the Term Loan if prepaid after the first anniversary of the Closing Date through and including the second anniversary of the Closing Date, or (iii) 1% of the principal amount of the Term Loan if prepaid after the second anniversary of the Closing Date and prior to the maturity date. The Term Loan is secured by substantially all the Company's assets, except for the Company's intellectual property and certain other customary exclusions. Additionally, in connection with the Term Loan, the Company entered into the Exit Fee Agreement, as discussed in Note 4.

The Loan Agreement contains customary representations and warranties and customary affirmative and negative covenants. As of December 31, 2019, the Company was in compliance with all of the covenants set forth in the Loan Agreement.

In addition, the Loan Agreement contains customary events of default that entitle the Lender to cause the Company's indebtedness under the Loan Agreement to become immediately due and payable, and to exercise remedies against the Company and the collateral securing the Term Loan, including its cash. Upon the occurrence and for the duration of an event of default, an additional default interest rate equal to 4.0% per annum will apply to all obligations owed under the Loan Agreement. As of December 31, 2019, to the Company's knowledge, there were no facts or circumstances in existence that would give rise to an event of default.

As of December 31, 2019, the Company's future debt payment obligations towards the principal and final fee, excluding interest payments and the Exit Fee are as follows (in thousands):

2020	$ 2,083
2021	25,000
2022	24,892
Total principal and final fee payments	51,975
Less: Unamortized discount and debt issuance costs	(741)
Less: Unaccreted value of final fee	(1,220)
Loan payable	50,014
Less: Loan payable, current portion	1,183
Loan payable, net of current portion	$ 48,831

7. STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY

On December 9, 2019, the Company completed an underwritten public offering of 20,000,000 shares of common stock at a price of $6.25 per share before underwriting discounts and commissions, or the 2019 Offering. In connection with the 2019 Offering, the Company entered into an underwriting agreement, or the 2019 Underwriting Agreement, with Citigroup Global Markets Inc., Cowen and Company LLC, SVB Leerink LLC and Piper Jaffray & Co., or collectively the 2019 Underwriters, pursuant to which the Company granted to the 2019 Underwriters a 30-day option to purchase up to an additional 3,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock, or the 2019 Overallotment. The Company completed the sale of 23,000,000 shares, inclusive of the 2019 Overallotment, to the 2019 Underwriters and that sale resulted in the receipt by the Company of aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $143.8 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses totaling approximately $8.9 million, which resulted in net proceeds of approximately $134.9 million.

On November 22, 2019, the Company and KKC entered into a stock purchase agreement, pursuant to which the Company sold an aggregate of 2,873,563 shares of its common stock at $6.96 per share for net proceeds of approximately $20.0 million, or the Private Placement. The Private Placement closed on November 25, 2019.

On May 25, 2018, the Company completed an underwritten public offering of 12,500,000 shares of common stock at a price of $4.00 per share before underwriting discounts and commissions, or the 2018 Offering. In connection with the 2018 Offering, the Company entered into an underwriting agreement, or the 2018 Underwriting Agreement, with Jefferies LLC and SVB Leerink (formerly known as Leerink Partners LLC), or together the 2018 Underwriters, pursuant to which the Company granted to the 2018 Underwriters a 30-day option to purchase up to an additional 1,875,000 shares of the Company's common stock, or the 2018 Overallotment. The Company completed the sale of 14,375,000 shares, inclusive of the 2018 Overallotment, to the 2018 Underwriters, and that sale resulted in the receipt by the Company of aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $57.5 million, less underwriting discounts, commissions and offering expenses totaling approximately $3.7 million, which resulted in net proceeds of approximately $53.8 million.

8. EQUITY INCENTIVE PLANS

2008 Plan

The Company granted options under its 2008 Stock Incentive Plan (the "2008 Plan") until June 2014 when it was terminated as to future awards, although it continues to govern the terms of options that remain outstanding under the 2008 Plan. The 2008 Plan provided for the granting of incentive and non-qualified stock options, and stock purchase rights to employees, directors and consultants at the discretion of the Board of Directors. Stock options granted generally vest over a period of four years from the date of grant. In connection with the Board of Directors and stockholders' approval of the 2014 Plan, all remaining shares available for future award under the 2008 Plan were transferred to 2014 Plan, and the 2008 Plan was terminated.

2014 Plan

The 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan (the "2014 Plan") became effective on June 18, 2014. Under the 2014 Plan, 1,419,328 shares of common stock were initially reserved for issuance pursuant to a variety of stock-based compensation awards, including stock options, stock appreciation rights, or SARs, restricted stock awards, service-based restricted stock unit ("RSU") awards, performance-based restricted stock unit ("PRSU") awards, deferred stock awards, deferred stock unit awards, dividend equivalent awards, stock payment awards and performance awards. In addition, 35,221 shares that had been available for future awards under the 2008 Plan as of June 18, 2014, were added to the initial reserve available under the 2014 Plan, bringing the total reserve upon the effective date of the 2014 Plan to 1,454,549. The number of shares initially reserved for issuance or transfer pursuant to awards under the 2014 Plan will be increased by (i) the number of shares represented by awards outstanding under 2008 Plan on June 18, 2014, that are either forfeited or lapse unexercised or that are repurchased for the original purchase price thereof, up to a maximum of 1,153,279 shares, and (ii) if approved by the Administrator of the 2014 Plan, an annual increase on the first day of each fiscal year ending in 2024 equal to the lesser of (A) four percent (4.0%) of the shares of stock outstanding (on an as converted basis) on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year and (B) such smaller number of shares of stock as determined by our board of directors; provided, however, that no more than 10,683,053 shares of stock may be issued upon the exercise of incentive stock options.

2016 Plan

In November 2016, the Company's board of directors approved the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan (the "Inducement Plan") under which 1,000,000 shares were reserved. As of December 31, 2019, no shares of the Company's common stock were subject to inducement grants that were issued pursuant to the Inducement Plan.

Stock Plan Activity

The following table summarizes activity under the 2008 Plan and the 2014 Plan, including grants issued to nonemployees, in the year ended December 31, 2019:

	Shares Available for Grant	Options Issued and Outstanding				
		Number of Shares	Weighted-Average Exercise Price per Share		Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (in Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value (in thousands)
Balance at December 31, 2018	608,528	5,506,760	$	8.32		
Options authorized	2,490,417	—	$	—		
Options granted	(2,362,685)	2,362,685	$	2.56		
Options exercised	—	(68,062)	$	2.59		
Options canceled	528,615	(528,615)	$	7.69		
Issuance of common stock for services	(113,136)	—		—		
Forfeitures of PRSUs granted in prior years	45,007	—		—		
Balance at December 31, 2019	1,196,746	7,272,768	$	6.55	7.40	$ 19,128
Vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2019		6,754,711	$	6.74	7.30	$ 17,217
Exercisable at December 31, 2019		4,183,281	$	7.95	6.46	$ 8,753

The aggregate intrinsic value represents the difference between the total pre-tax value (i.e., the difference between the Company's stock price and the exercise price) of stock options outstanding as of December 31, 2019, based on the Company's common stock closing price of $7.51 per share, which would have been received by the option holders had all their in-the-money options been exercised as of that date.

The intrinsic value of options exercised during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, was $0.4 million, zero, and $0.3 million, respectively.

The weighted-average grant-date estimated fair value of options granted during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017 was $1.79, $4.29 and $8.19 per share, respectively. The estimated grant date fair value of employee stock options was calculated using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model, based on the following weighted-average assumptions:

	Year Ended December 31, 2019
Expected term (years)	6.00
Expected volatility	81 %
Risk-free interest rate	2.42 %
Dividend yield	— %

Expected Term—The Company has limited historical information to develop reasonable expectations about future exercise patterns and post-vesting employment termination behavior for its stock-option grants. As such, the expected term was estimated using the simplified method whereby the expected term equals the arithmetic average of the vesting term and the original contractual term of the option.

Expected Volatility—Since January 1, 2017, the Company has used the historic volatility of its own stock over the retrospective period corresponding to the expected remaining term of the options, or the period since its shares were first quoted on The Nasdaq Global Market, if that is shorter, to compute its expected stock price volatility.

Risk-Free Interest Rate—The risk-free interest rate assumption is based on the zero-coupon U.S. treasury instruments on the date of grant with a maturity date consistent with the expected term of the Company's stock option grants.

Dividend Yield—To date, the Company has not declared or paid any cash dividends and does not have any plans to do so in the future. Therefore, the Company used an expected dividend yield of zero.

Restricted Stock Units

The following table summarizes restricted stock unit activity under the 2014 Plan in the year ended December 31, 2019, and includes restricted stock units with time or service-based vesting and those restricted stock units with performance-based vesting:

	Number of RSUs	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value Per Share	Number of PRSUs	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value Per Share
Non-vested restricted stock units at December 31, 2018	85,609	$ 4.70	894,764	$ 4.30
Granted	—	$ —	—	$ —
Vested	(85,609)	$ 4.70	—	$ —
Forfeited	—	$ —	(45,007)	$ 4.30
Non-vested restricted stock units at December 31, 2019	—	$ —	849,757	$ 4.30

RSUs and PRSUs are generally subject to forfeiture if employment terminates prior to the release of vesting restrictions. The related compensation expense, which is based on the grant date fair value of the Company's common stock multiplied by the number of units granted, is recognized ratably over the period during which the vesting restrictions lapse.

In January 2017, the Company granted 161,865 PRSUs to certain employees that vested upon the achievement of specified performance conditions, subject to the employees' continued service relationship with the Company through the date of achievement, of which 125,895 PRSUs vested in November 2018. None of these PRSUs vested during the year ended December 31, 2017. The related compensation cost was recognized as an expense over the estimated vesting period ratably after achievement of the milestone was deemed probable. The expense recognized for these awards was based on the grant date fair value of the Company's common stock multiplied by the number of units granted. The Company recognized zero, $0.6 million and $1.0 million of related expense during the year ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

In July 2018, the Company granted 903,374 PRSUs to its employees that vest upon the achievement of certain performance conditions, subject to the employees' continued service relationship with the Company through the achievement date. At December 31, 2019, 849,757 of these PRSUs were outstanding and none vested. Based on the evaluation of the performance conditions at December 31, 2019, the Company recorded stock-based compensation expense of $2.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2019. Stock-based compensation expense recorded related to these PRSUs were zero for the year ended December 31, 2018. The related compensation cost was recognized as an expense over the estimated vesting period ratably when achievement of the milestone was considered probable. The expense recognized for these awards is based on the grant date fair value of the Company's common stock multiplied by the number of units granted.

With respect to RSUs, we recognize expense over the estimated vesting period ratably, contingent on continued service. The Company recognized $0.3 million, $0.9 million and $0.9 million of related expense during the year ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The total estimated fair value of RSUs vested during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017 was $0.2 million, $0.6 million and $0.4 million, respectively.

Issuance of Common Stock for Services

During the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, the Company issued 113,136, 75,183 and 46,858 shares, respectively, of common stock to members of the board of directors who elected to receive stock in lieu of their cash fees under the Company's Non-Employee Director Compensation Program. The shares issued during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017 were valued at $0.3 million, $0.3 million and $0.2 million, respectively, based on the fair value of the common stock on the date of grant.

Employee Stock Purchase Plan

The Company adopted the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan ("ESPP") and initially reserved 202,762 shares of common stock as of its effective date of June 18, 2014. If approved by the Administrator of the ESPP, on the first day of each calendar year, ending in 2024, the number of shares in the reserve will increase by an amount equal to the lesser of (i) one percent (1.0%) of the shares of common stock outstanding on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year and (ii) such number of shares of common stock as determined by the board of directors; provided, however, no more than 2,230,374 shares of our common stock may be issued under the ESPP.

The following table summarizes ESPP activity in the year ended December 31, 2019:

	Shares Available for Grant	Number of Shares Purchased	Purchase Price per Share	Gross Proceeds (in thousands)
Balance at December 31, 2018	680,322	330,936		
Shares purchased	(160,744)	160,744	$ 2.48	$ 396
Balance at December 31, 2019	519,578	491,680		

The following table illustrates the weighted-average assumptions for the Black-Scholes option-pricing model used in determining the fair value of ESPP purchase rights granted to employees:

	Year Ended December 31, 2019
Expected term (years)	0.5
Expected volatility	69 %
Risk-free interest rate	2.20 %
Dividend yield	— %

Stock-based Compensation

Total stock-based compensation recognized was as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
	(in thousands)		
Research and development	$ 4,104	$ 3,666	$ 4,585
General and administrative	5,832	5,560	5,005
Total	$ 9,936	$ 9,226	$ 9,590

At December 31, 2019, the Company had total unrecognized stock-based compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, of the following:

	At December 31, 2019	
	Unrecognized Compensation Expense (in thousands)	Average Vesting Period (Years)
Stock options grants	$ 8,277	2.5
PRSU grants	$ 965	0.7
ESPP	$ 53	0.2

9. WARRANTS

Offering of Common Stock and Warrants

In June 2015, the Company sold and issued an aggregate of 7,242,992 shares of its common stock and warrants to purchase 2,172,899 shares of common stock for aggregate gross proceeds of approximately $77.8 million or net proceeds, after deducting issuance costs, of approximately $74.3 million. The purchase price for the common stock was $10.70 per share and the purchase price for the warrants was $0.125 per warrant. The warrants are exercisable for an exercise price of $13.91 per share at any time prior to the earlier of (i) 5 years from the date of issuance or (ii) certain changes in control of the Company. The Company had determined that the warrants should be classified as equity. In July 2015, the Company filed a registration statement with the SEC with respect to the common stock and warrants.

Other than with respect to warrants issued to holders affiliated with New Enterprise Associates, the warrants contain limitations that prevent each holder of warrants from acquiring shares upon exercise of the warrants that would cause the number of shares beneficially owned by it and its affiliates to exceed 9.99% of the total number of shares of the Company's common stock then issued and outstanding. In addition, upon certain changes in control of the Company, each holder of a warrant can elect to receive, subject to certain limitations and assumptions, securities in a successor entity. None of the warrants issued in June 2015 have been exercised including during each of the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017.

10. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment consist of the following:

	December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
Laboratory equipment	$ 7,243	$ 6,965
Office equipment and furniture	870	889
Leasehold improvements	7,949	7,949
Property and equipment, gross	16,062	15,803
Less: accumulated depreciation	(12,626)	(10,192)
Total property and equipment, net	$ 3,436	$ 5,611

Depreciation expense totaled $2.5 million, $2.7 million and $2.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

11. ACCRUED EXPENSES AND OTHER CURRENT LIABILITIES

Accrued expenses and other current liabilities consist of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2019	December 31, 2018
Accrued clinical and non-clinical expenses	$ 3,451	$ 9,790
Accrued contract manufacturing expenses	1,414	1,971
Derivative liability for exit fee	969	533
Accrued regulatory expenses	342	21
Accrued professional and consulting services	323	112
Foreign currency derivative contract	—	52
Other	749	378
	$ 7,248	$ 12,857

12. LEASES

The Company has obtained the right of use for office space assets under two operating lease agreements. The Company has evaluated its facility leases and determined that, effective upon the adoption of Topic 842, the leases evaluated are all operating leases. The Company has performed an evaluation of its other contracts with suppliers and collaborators in accordance with Topic 842 and has determined that, except for the facility leases described below, none of the Company's contracts contain a lease.

The Company obtained the right of use of office space located in Fremont, California, under a lease agreement entered into in September 2008 that was amended in December 2012 to extend the lease agreement to September 2016. In September 2014, the Company signed the second amendment to its facility lease agreement to add space and to extend the lease term through September 2019. In May 2016, the Company signed a third amendment to its facility lease agreement in Fremont, California to add space and to extend the lease term through September 2021 (the "Third Amendment"). The office space consists of 72,500 square feet, that includes an additional 10,716 square feet added in September 2019, with the entire lease terminating on September 10, 2021. The Company has an option to extend the term by five years as to the entire premises at the higher of (i) a 3% annual escalation of the then-current base rent and (ii) the then-current fair market value for comparable premises, by giving written notice of its election to exercise such option at least 12 months but not more than 18 months prior to the end of the expiration of the lease term. This option to extend the lease term by five years has not been included in the calculation since currently the exercise of the option is uncertain and therefore deemed not probable. The Company also obtained the right of use of 3,520 square feet of office space located in Waltham, Massachusetts, in October 2018 that terminates on September 30, 2021.

All of the Company's leases are operating leases. Certain of the leases have both lease and non-lease components. The Company has elected to account for each separate lease component and the non-lease components associated with that lease component as a single lease component for all classes of underlying assets. As of December 31, 2019, the weighted average discount rate used for the calculations was 12.99% and the weighted average remaining lease term was 1.8 years.

The following table provides additional details of the leases presented in the balance sheets (in thousands except remaining life and discount rate):

	December 31, 2019
Facilities	
Right of use assets	$ 3,970
Current portion of lease liabilities	2,608
Operating lease liability, net of current portion	2,076
Total liabilities	$ 4,684
Weighted-average remaining life	1.8 years
Weighted-average discount rate	12.99 %

The lease costs, which are included in operating expenses in our statements of operations, were as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31, 2019
Facilities	
Operating lease cost	$ 2,592
Cash paid for operating lease	$ 2,645

The following table summarizes the Company's undiscounted cash payment obligations for its operating lease liabilities as of December 30, 2019 (in thousands):

Years Ending December 31,	
2020	$ 3,065
2021	2,183
Total undiscounted operating lease payments	5,248
Imputed interest expenses	(564)
Total operating lease liabilities	4,684
Less: Current portion of operating lease liability	2,608
Operating lease liability, net of current portion	$ 2,076

Rent expense under operating leases was $2.6 million, $1.8 million and $1.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

13. COLLABORATION AND LICENSING AGREEMENTS

Kyowa Kirin Co., Ltd. (2019 KKC Agreement)

In November 2019, the Company entered into a research collaboration and option agreement with KKC, or the 2019 KKC Agreement, for the research to identify two pre-clinical study-ready compounds that are ready for designation as development compounds, with one compound inhibiting the first undisclosed target, or Program 1, and a second inhibiting the second undisclosed target, or Program 2. Pursuant to the 2019 KKC Agreement, upon completion of the research and designation by the research steering committee of one or more development candidates, or DCs, KKC, has the right to execute one or more separate collaborative agreements relating to the development and commercialization of one or both DCs in certain specified territories.

Under the terms of the 2019 KKC Agreement, KKC agreed to pay the Company a non-refundable, non-creditable upfront fee of $10.0 million, which is payable as follows: the first installment of $5.0 million within 30 days of the

Effective Date, and the second installment of $5.0 million on the first anniversary of the Effective Date, unless the 2019 KKC Agreement is earlier terminated by KKC due to material breach by the Company. The term of the 2019 KKC Agreement commenced on November 11, 2019, or the Effective Date, and ends on the earliest of: (a) two years following the Effective Date, or (b) the nomination of a program DC for both programs, (c) or the nomination of one program DC and the decision by the parties to cease research for the other program, (d) or the decision by the parties to cease research for both programs. The Company assessed the 2019 KKC Agreement in accordance with ASC 606 and concluded that the contract's counterparty, KKC, is a customer. Management also considered the modification guidance prescribed in ASC 606 and concluded that the 2019 KKC Agreement should be accounted for as a separate contract from the 2017 KKC Agreement, as defined and discussed below.

The Company identified various promises in the 2019 KKC Agreement, including the grant of an initial research license, the Program 1 research, the Program 2 research, the right to obtain certain development and commercialization rights with Program 1 in certain territories and the right to obtain development and commercialization rights with Program 2 in certain territories, and participation in a joint steering committee, or JSC, and determined that KKC could not benefit from either of the research programs without the research license and participation in the JSC. As such, the combined license, research programs and participation in the JSC were deemed to be the highest level of goods and services that can be deemed distinct for each of the Program 1 research and Program 2 research. The Company concluded that the options to obtain additional development and commercialization rights that are exercisable by KKC under certain circumstances are not performance obligations of the contract at inception because the option fees reflect the standalone selling price of the options, and therefore, the options are not considered to be material rights.

At the outset of the 2019 KKC Agreement, the Company determined that the initial transaction price is $10.0 million and that revenue associated with the combined performance obligations will be recognized as services are provided using a input method. Since transfer of control occurs over time, in management's judgment this input method is the best measure of progress towards satisfying the performance obligations and reflects a faithful depiction of the transfer of goods and services. Revenue will be recognized over the Program 1 and Program 2 research periods, which are currently expected to extend through the end of 2021. Management will re-evaluate the estimates related to the transaction price at the end of each reporting period and as uncertain events are resolved or other changes in circumstances occur and adjust the timing of revenue recognition as necessary.

During the year ended December 31, 2019, the Company recognized $0.5 million as revenue under the 2019 KKC Agreement in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss. The aggregate amount of the transaction price allocated to the Company's partially unsatisfied performance obligations as of December 31, 2019 was $9.5 million, of which $4.5 million is presented in the balance sheet as deferred revenue. As of December 31, 2019, the Company expects to recognize the remaining transaction price allocated to the Company's partially unsatisfied performance obligations over the remaining research terms, which, as noted above, are currently expected to extend through the end of 2021.

Xuanzhu (HK) Biopharmaceutical Limited, or XuanZhu

In November 2019, the Company entered into a license agreement with XuanZhu, or the XuanZhu Agreement, for a license to certain specific patent and patent applications. The Company assessed these arrangements in accordance with ASC 606 and concluded that the contract counterparty, XuanZhu, is a customer. Under the terms of the XuanZhu Agreement, the Company recognized $1.5 million in license fees when the agreement was executed, of which, $750,000 was received upfront in November 2019 and achievement for the second $750,000 payment was determined to be not materially at risk and probable of achievement and it was included in the transaction price and the amount was not probable of revenue reversal. Based on the Company's assessment, it identified that it has one combined performance obligation, which is the license and the specific patent grant.

In addition to the license fee of $1.5 million, the Company may be entitled to receive milestone payments. The variable consideration related to the remaining milestone payments has not been included in the transaction price as these were fully constrained at December 31, 2019.

For the year ended December 31, 2019, $1.5 million of license revenue was recorded with no cost of revenue related to the XuanZhu Agreement.

2017 KKC Agreement

In November 2017, the Company entered into an exclusive license agreement with KKC, or the 2017 KKC Agreement, for the development, commercialization and distribution of tenapanor in Japan for cardiorenal indications. The Company granted KKC an exclusive license to develop and commercialize certain NHE3 inhibitors including tenapanor in Japan for the treatment of cardiorenal diseases and conditions, excluding cancer. The Company retained the rights to tenapanor outside of Japan, and also retained the rights to tenapanor in Japan for indications other than those stated above. Pursuant to the License Agreement, KKC is responsible for all of the development and commercialization costs for tenapanor in treatment of cardiorenal diseases and conditions, excluding cancer in Japan. Under the 2017 KKC Agreement, the Company is responsible for supplying the tenapanor drug product for KKC's use in development and during commercialization until KKC has assumed such responsibility. Additionally, the Company is responsible for supplying the tenapanor drug substance for KKC's use in development and commercialization throughout the term of the 2017 KKC Agreement, provided that KKC may exercise an option to manufacture the tenapanor drug substance under certain conditions

The Company assessed these arrangements in accordance with ASC 606 and concluded that the contract counterparty, KKC, is a customer. Under the terms of the 2017 KKC Agreement, the Company received $30.0 million in up-front license fees which was recognized as revenue when the agreement was executed. Based on the Company's assessment, it identified that the license and the manufacturing supply services were its material performance obligations at the inception of the agreement, and as such each of the performance obligations are distinct. Additionally, on January 1, 2018, the Company recorded unbilled revenue under current assets of $5.0 million and an increase in uncharged license fees under current liabilities of $1.0 million related to the first milestone under the 2017 KKC Agreement that KKC achieved in February 2019, reflecting revenues and cost of revenue, respectively, that would have been recognized in the fourth quarter 2017 if the Company had adopted ASC 606 prior to January 1, 2018. On KKC's achievement of the milestone in February 2019, the balance related to unbilled revenue was adjusted to zero. Correspondingly, the $1.0 million balance related to uncharged license fees that the Company owed to AstraZeneca was reclassified to accounts payable during the first quarter of 2019, and subsequently paid to AstraZeneca during the second quarter of 2019.

In addition to the up-front license fee received of $30.0 million, the Company may be entitled to receive up to $55.0 million in total development milestones, of which $5.0 million has been received to date and 8.5 billion yen in commercialization milestones, or $78.3 million at the currency exchange rate on December 31, 2019, as well as reimbursement of cost, plus a reasonable overhead for the supply of product and high-teen royalties on net sales throughout the term of the agreement. The variable consideration related to the remaining development milestone payments has not been included in the transaction price as these were fully constrained at December 31, 2019.

For the years ended December 31, 2019 and 2018, $0.3 million each of other revenue was recorded for manufacturing supply of tenapanor and other materials to KKC for its product development and clinical trials in Japan, in accordance with the Company's agreement with KKC, and for each period, negligible cost of revenue was recorded pursuant to the AstraZeneca Termination Agreement.

Shanghai Fosun Pharmaceutical Industrial Development Co. Ltd., or Fosun Pharma

In December 2017, the Company entered into an exclusive license agreement with Fosun Pharma, or the Fosun Agreement, for the development, commercialization and distribution of tenapanor in China for both hyperphosphatemia and irritable bowel syndrome with constipation, or IBS-C. The Company assessed these arrangements in accordance with ASC 606 and concluded that the contract counterparty, Fosun Pharma, is a customer. Under the terms of the Fosun Agreement, the Company received $12.0 million in up-front license fees which was recognized as revenue when the agreement was executed. Based on the Company's assessment, it identified that the license and the manufacturing supply services were its material performance obligations at the inception of the agreement, and as such each of the performance obligations are distinct.

In addition, the Company may be entitled to additional development and commercialization milestones of up to $110.0 million, as well as reimbursement of cost plus a reasonable overhead for the supply of product and tiered royalties on net sales ranging from the mid-teens to 20%. The variable consideration related to the remaining development milestone payments has not been included in the transaction price as these were fully constrained at December 31, 2019.

For the year ended December 31, 2019, $3.0 million revenue was recorded towards achievement of a milestone related to the Fosun Agreement, and for the year ended December 31, 2018, there was no revenue recorded.

Knight Therapeutics, Inc., or Knight

In March 2018, the Company entered into an exclusive license agreement with Knight Therapeutics, Inc., or the Knight Agreement, for the development, commercialization and distribution of tenapanor in Canada for hyperphosphatemia and IBS-C. The Company assessed these arrangements in accordance with ASC 606 and concluded that the contract counterparty, Knight, is a customer. Based on the Company's assessment, it identified that the license and the manufacturing supply services were its material performance obligations at the inception of the agreement, and as such each of the performance obligations are distinct.

Under the terms of the agreement, the Company is eligible to receive up to CAD 25 million in total payments, or $19.2 million at the currency exchange rate on December 31, 2019, including an up-front payment and development and sales milestones, reimbursement of supply costs on a schedule specifying cost per tablet, with a reasonable mark up for overhead, as well as tiered royalty rates on net sales ranging from the mid-single digits to the low twenties. The variable consideration related to the remaining development milestone payments has not been included in the transaction price as these were fully constrained at December 31, 2019.

For the years ended December 31, 2019 and 2018, zero and $2.3 million of revenue was recorded, respectively, related to the Knight Agreement, and zero and $0.5 million of cost of revenue was recorded, respectively, pursuant to the AstraZeneca Termination Agreement.

AstraZeneca

In June 2015, the Company entered into a termination agreement with AstraZeneca, or the AstraZeneca Termination Agreement, pursuant to which the Company remains liable to pay AstraZeneca license fees for (i) future royalties at a royalty rate of 10% of net sales of tenapanor or other NHE3 products by the Company or its licensees, and (ii) 20% of non-royalty revenue received from a new collaboration partner should the Company elect to license, or otherwise provide rights to develop and commercialize tenapanor or certain other NHE3 inhibitors, up to a maximum of $75.0 million in aggregate for (i) and (ii). To date in aggregate, the Company has recognized $10.5 million of the $75.0 million, recorded as cost of revenue, as follows:

	Cost of Revenue	
	Recognized	Amount Paid
	(in thousands)	
Year 2017	$ 9,400 *	$ 6,000
Year 2018	466	2,864
Year 2019	600	1,002
Total	$ 10,466	$ 9,866
Maximum payment per termination agreement		75,000
Remaining potential commitment		$ 65,134

* Includes the $1,000 adjustment recorded pursuant to the adoption of ASC 606, as discussed in Note 2.

14. INCOME TAXES

The components of the provision for income taxes for the year ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, are as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Current:			
State	$ 2	$ 4	$ 5
Foreign	301	—	1,204
Total current	303	4	1,209
Deferred:			
Federal	—	—	(30)
Total deferred	—	—	(30)
Provision for income taxes	$ 303	$ 4	$ 1,179

The following is a reconciliation of the statutory federal income tax rate to the Company's effective tax rate:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Change in valuation allowance	(21.9)%	(22.5)%	19.9 %
Income tax at the federal statutory rate	21.0	21.0	35.0
State taxes, net of federal benefit	0.3	0.6	0.5
Net impact related to foreign subsidiary	—	—	(1.2)
Impact of tax reform rate change	—	—	(56.4)
Tax credits	1.6	1.4	1.0
Stock based compensation	(0.9)	(1.2)	(0.8)
Other	(0.4)	0.7	0.1
Income tax provision	(0.3)%	— %	(1.9)%

Deferred income taxes reflect the tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. Significant components of the Company's deferred tax assets are as follows as of December 31, 2019 and 2018:

	December 31,	
	2019	2018
	(in thousands)	
Deferred tax assets:		
Amortization and depreciation	$ 45,555	$ 38,376
Net operating loss carryforwards	40,896	31,621
Tax credits	10,136	8,200
Stock-based compensation	4,853	3,763
Lease obligation	984	—
Other	940	888
Gross deferred tax assets	103,364	82,848
Valuation allowance	(102,344)	(81,645)
Deferred tax assets net of valuation allowance	1,020	1,203
Deferred tax liabilities		
Right of use asset	(834)	—
Revenue recognition	(158)	(1,054)
Other	(28)	(149)
Net deferred tax assets	$ —	$ —

Realization of deferred tax assets is dependent on future taxable income, if any, the timing and the amount of which are uncertain. The Company assesses the available positive and negative evidence to estimate whether sufficient future taxable income will be generated to permit use of the existing deferred tax assets. A significant component of objective negative evidence evaluated was the Company's cumulative loss incurred over the three-year period ended December 31, 2019. Such objective evidence limits the ability to consider other subjective evidence, such as our projections for future growth. On the basis of this evaluation, as of December 31, 2019, December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, a full valuation allowance has been recorded against Company's net deferred tax asset. The amount of the deferred tax asset considered realizable, however, could be adjusted if estimates of future taxable income during the carryforward period are reduced or increased or if objective negative evidence in the form of cumulative losses is no longer present and additional weight is given to subjective evidence such as our projections for growth.

As of December 31, 2019, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards for federal income tax purposes of approximately $232.1 million, of which approximately $91.4 million can be carried forward indefinitely and the remaining net operating losses expire beginning in 2030, if not utilized. Federal research and development tax credit carryforwards of approximately $11.4 million that expire beginning in 2027, if not utilized, and foreign tax credit carryforwards of approximately $1.2 million that expire in 2027, if not utilized.

In addition, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards for California income tax purposes of approximately $88.3 million that expire beginning of 2030, if not utilized, and state research and development tax credit carryforwards of approximately $7.8 million which can be carried forward indefinitely. The Company had approximately $0.1 million of minimum tax credit carryovers for California income tax purposes. The minimum tax credits have no expiration date. The Company had other state net operating losses of approximately $1.8 million that begin to expire in 2025.

The future utilization of net operating loss and tax credit carryforwards and credits may be subject to an annual limitation, pursuant to Internal Revenue Code Sections 382 and 383, as a result of ownership changes that may have occurred previously or that could occur in the future. Due to the existence of the valuation allowance, limitations under Section 382 and 383 will not impact the Company's effective tax rate.

A reconciliation of the beginning and ending amount of unrecognized tax benefits is as follows:

	December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
	(in thousands)		
Balance at beginning of year	$ 23,052	$ 20,734	$ 3,892
Additions based on tax positions related to prior year	755	1,634	16,103
Additions based on tax positions related to current year	731	684	739
Balance at end of year	$ 24,538	$ 23,052	$ 20,734

The unrecognized tax benefits, if recognized and in absence of full valuation allowance, would impact the income tax provision by $13.2 million, $9.8 million, and $8.6 million as of December 31, 2019, 2018, and 2017, respectively.

The Company has elected to include interest and penalties as a component of tax expense. During the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, the Company did not recognize accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits. Although the timing and outcome of an income tax audit is highly uncertain, the Company does not anticipate that the amount of existing unrecognized tax benefits will significantly change during the next 12 months.

The Company files a federal income tax return in the U.S. and state income tax returns in California, Georgia, Maryland, Massachusetts, Michigan, New Hampshire, Oregon and Wisconsin. Because carryforward attributes

generated in past years may be adjusted in a future period, the income tax returns remain open to U.S. federal and California state tax examinations. The Company is not currently under examination in any tax jurisdiction.

15. GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION AND CONCENTRATIONS

Revenue by geographic areas for the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, are as follows (in thousands):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
United States	$ —	$ —	$ —
International:			
North America (1)	—	2,320	—
Asia Pacific (2) (3) (4)	5,281	287	42,000
Total revenue	$ 5,281	$ 2,607	$ 42,000

(1) Revenues from North America in 2018 comprised of $2.3 million from Canada in accordance with the Knight Agreement.

(2) Revenues from Asia Pacific in 2019 comprised $0.3 million and $0.5 million from Japan in accordance with the 2017 KKC Agreement and 2019 KKC Agreement, respectively, $1.5 million from Hong Kong in accordance with the XuanZhu Agreement and $3.0 million from China in accordance with the Fosun Agreement.

(3) Revenues from Asia Pacific in 2018 comprised $0.3 million from Japan in accordance with the 2017 KKC Agreement.

(4) Revenues from Asia Pacific in 2017 included $30.0 million from Japan in accordance with the 2017 KKC Agreement and $12.0 million from China in accordance with the Fosun Agreement.

Revenues are attributed to geographical areas based on the domicile of the Company's collaboration partners.

Revenues recorded in the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, were wholly from collaboration partnerships. Collaboration partnerships accounting for more than 10% of total revenues during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, are as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Fosun Pharma	57 %	—	29 %
XuanZhu	28 %	—	—
KKC	15 %	11 %	71 %
Knight	—	89 %	—

16. NET LOSS PER SHARE

Basic net loss per share is calculated by dividing net loss by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the period, less shares subject to repurchase, and excludes any dilutive effects of stock-based awards and warrants. Diluted net loss per common share is computed giving effect to all potential dilutive common shares, including common stock issuable upon exercise of stock options, and unvested restricted common stock and stock units. As the Company had net losses for the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, all potential common shares

were determined to be anti-dilutive. The following table sets forth the computation of net loss per common share (in thousands, except share and per share amounts):

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Numerator:			
Net loss	$ (94,940)	$ (91,298)	$ (64,339)
Denominator:			
Weighted average common shares outstanding - basic and diluted	64,478,066	56,219,919	47,435,331
Net loss per share - basic and diluted	$ (1.47)	$ (1.62)	$ (1.36)

For the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, the total numbers of securities that could potentially dilute net income per share in the future that were not considered in the diluted net loss per share calculations because the effect would have been anti-dilutive were as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2019	2018	2017
Options to purchase common stock	7,128,247	5,378,008	3,977,160
Warrants to purchase common stock	2,172,899	2,172,899	2,172,899
Restricted stock units	—	199,135	323,819
Performance-based restricted stock units	867,506	395,791	148,216
ESPP shares issuable	78,761	63,413	60,524
Total	10,247,413	8,209,246	6,682,618

The number of potential common shares that would have been included in diluted income per share had it not been for the anti-dilutive effect caused by the net loss, computed by converting these securities using the treasury stock method during the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, was approximately 1.1 million, 1.0 million and 1.0 million, respectively.

17. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

Operating Leases

The Company has facility leases (see Note 12), as well as operating equipment leases. Future minimum payments on the Company's noncancelable operating leases as of December 31, 2019 are as follows (in thousands):

Year Ended December 31,	Amounts
2020	$ 3,121
2021	2,213
Total	$ 5,334

Guarantees and Indemnifications

The Company indemnifies each of its officers and directors for certain events or occurrences, subject to certain limits, while the officer or director is or was serving at our request in such capacity, as permitted under Delaware law and in accordance with our certificate of incorporation and bylaws. The term of the indemnification period lasts as long as an officer or director may be subject to any proceeding arising out of acts or omissions of such officer or director in such capacity.

The maximum amount of potential future indemnification is unlimited; however, the Company currently holds director and officer liability insurance, which allows the transfer of risk associated with our exposure and may enable the Company to recover a portion of any future amounts paid. The Company believes that the fair value of these

indemnification obligations is minimal. Accordingly, the Company has not recognized any liabilities relating to these obligations for any period presented.

Legal Proceedings and Claims

From time to time the Company may be involved in claims arising in connection with its business. Based on information currently available, management believes that the amount, or range, of reasonably possible losses in connection with any pending actions against the Company will not be material to the Company's financial condition or cash flows, and no contingent liabilities were accrued as of December 31, 2019 or 2018.

18. SELECTED QUARTERLY FINANCIAL DATA (UNAUDITED)

Selected quarterly financial results from operations for the years ended December 31, 2019 and 2018 are as follows (in thousands, except per share amounts):

	2019 Quarter Ended			
	March 31	June 30	September 30	December 31
Total revenue	$ —	$ 18	$ 3,013	$ 2,250
Gross profit	$ —	$ 18	$ 2,413	$ 2,250
Operating expenses	$ 25,498	$ 24,846	$ 24,502	$ 21,098
Net loss	$ (26,144)	$ (25,467)	$ (23,539)	$ (19,790)
Net loss per share - basic and diluted	$ (0.42)	$ (0.41)	$ (0.37)	$ (0.27)

	2018 Quarter Ended			
	March 31	June 30	September 30	December 31
Total revenue	$ 2,320	$ 30	$ 172	$ 85
Gross profit	$ 1,856	$ 30	$ 170	$ 85
Operating expenses	$ 19,541	$ 22,184	$ 23,902	$ 27,461
Net loss	$ (17,019)	$ (22,291)	$ (24,126)	$ (27,862)
Net loss per share - basic and diluted	$ (0.36)	$ (0.42)	$ (0.39)	$ (0.45)

ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Conclusions Regarding the Effectiveness of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

As of December 31, 2019, management, with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, performed an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) of the Exchange Act. Our disclosure controls and procedures are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in the reports we file or submit under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission's rules and forms, and that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosures.

Any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objective and management necessarily applies its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures. Based on this evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of December 31, 2019, the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures were effective at a reasonable assurance level.

Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, our CEO and CFO, and effected by our Board of Directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that:

- Pertain to the maintenance of records that accurately and fairly reflect in reasonable detail the transactions and dispositions of the assets of our company;

- Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and directors; and

- Provide reasonable assurances regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material adverse effect on our financial statements.

Our management assessed our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2019, the end the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Management based its assessment on criteria established in "Internal Control—Integrated Framework (2013)" issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on management's assessment of our internal control over financial reporting, management concluded that, as of December 31, 2019, our internal control over financial reporting was effective.

The effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2019, has been audited by an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report, which is included under "Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data" of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Internal control over financial reporting has inherent limitations. Internal control over financial reporting is a process that involves human diligence and compliance and is subject to lapses in judgment and breakdowns resulting from human failures. Internal control over financial reporting also can be circumvented by collusion or improper management override. Because of such limitations, there is a risk that material misstatements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis by internal control over financial reporting. However, these inherent limitations are known features of the financial reporting process. Therefore, it is possible to design into the process safeguards to reduce, though not eliminate, this risk.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in our internal controls over financial reporting during the quarter ended December 31, 2019, identified in connection with the evaluation required by Rule 13a-15(d) and 15d-15(d) of the Exchange Act that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting other than completion of the actions taken to remediate the material weakness identified as of June 30, 2019.

Remediation of Material Weakness

As disclosed in Item 4 in our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended June 30, 2019 and September 30, 2019, we identified a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting due to a failure in the design and implementation of controls over the evaluation of the terms of our clinical trial contracts for inclusion into our clinical financial model which estimates clinical trial expenses. Specifically, we had failed to properly interpret an expense in our clinical trial contracts which resulted in the over accrual of our clinical trial expenses.

During 2019, we executed our remediation plan for this material weakness. Our remediation activities included:

- Designing and implementing an effective internal control related to internal communication and joint review between the clinical, legal and accounting groups in the establishment of new clinical financial models when clinical contracts are executed to ensure that clinical contracts are properly interpreted and that estimates of clinical expenses are based on appropriate drivers;

- Enhancing the precision of an internal control related to the tracking of invoices and comparison to the clinical financial model to assure that clinical expenses within the clinical financial model are appropriately included and estimated; and

- Implementing an ongoing review of the accrual models where assumptions and estimates built into the models are reassessed for reasonableness, considering any new information known as of that date that would challenge the initial considerations made when the model was set up.

We tested such newly established policies, procedures, and control activities designed to address the above-described material weakness. As a result, we believe that this material weakness was remediated as of December 31, 2019.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors of Ardelyx, Inc.

Opinion on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

We have audited Ardelyx, Inc.'s internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2019, based on criteria established in Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework) ("the COSO criteria"). In our opinion, Ardelyx, Inc. ("the Company") maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2019, based on the COSO criteria.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB"), the balance sheets of the Company as of December 31, 2019 and 2018, the related statements of operations and comprehensive loss, stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2019, and the related notes and our report dated March 6, 2020 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for Opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting included in the accompanying Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects.

Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Redwood City, California
March 6, 2020

ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

PART III

ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Information required by this item will be contained in our definitive proxy statement to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on Schedule 14A in connection with our 2020 Annual Meeting of Stockholders (the "Proxy Statement"), which will be filed not later than 120 days after the end of our fiscal year ended December 31, 2019, under the headings "Executive Officers," "Election of Directors," "Corporate Governance," and " Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance," and is incorporated herein by reference.

We have adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to our officers, directors and employees which is available on our website at www.ardelyx.com. The Code of Business Conduct and Ethics is intended to qualify as a "code of ethics" within the meaning of Section 406 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and Item 406 of Regulation S-K. In addition, we intend to promptly disclose (1) the nature of any amendment to our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller or persons performing similar functions and (2) the nature of any waiver, including an implicit waiver, from a provision of our code of ethics that is granted to one of these specified officers, the name of such person who is granted the waiver and the date of the waiver on our website in the future.

ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The information required by this item regarding executive compensation will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the sections titled "Executive Compensation" in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The information required by this item regarding security ownership of certain beneficial owners and management will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the section titled "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management" and "Equity Compensation Plan Information" in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The information required by this item regarding certain relationships and related transactions and director independence will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the sections titled "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions" and "Election of Directors", respectively, in our Proxy Statement.

ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES

The information required by this item regarding principal accountant fees and services will be incorporated by reference to the information set forth in the section titled "Principal Accountant Fees and Services" in our Proxy Statement.

PART IV

ITEM 15. EXHIBITS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

(a) The following documents are filed as part of this report:

1. Financial Statements

   See Index to Financial Statements at Item 8 herein.

2. Financial Statement Schedules

   All schedules are omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the financial statements or notes thereto.

3. Exhibits

   See the Exhibit Index immediately following this page.

ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY

None.

Exhibit Index

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated by Reference			Filed Herewith
		Form	Date	Number	
3.1	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation	8-K	6/24/2014	3.1	
3.2	Amended and Restated Bylaws	8-K	6/24/2014	3.2	
4.1	Reference is made to Exhibits 3.1 and 3.2				
4.2	Form of Common Stock Certificate	S-1/A	6/18/2014	4.2	
4.3	Form of Warrant issued pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	S-3	7/13/2015	4.3	
4.4	Description of the Registrant's Securities Registered Pursuant to Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934				X
10.1	Termination Agreement, dated June 2, 2015, by and between AstraZeneca AB and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-Q	8/12/2015	10.1	
10.2	Amendment No. 1 to Termination Agreement and to Manufacturing and Supply Agreement, dated November 2, 2015 by and between AstraZeneca AB and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-K	3/4/2016	10.1(d)	
10.3(a)	Lease, dated August 8, 2008, by and between 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC and Ardelyx, Inc.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.4(a)	
10.3(b)	First Amendment to Lease, dated December 20, 2012, by and between 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC and Ardelyx, Inc.	S-1	5/19/2014	10.4(b)	
10.3(c)	Second Amendment to Lease, dated September 5, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC	8-K	9/9/2014	10.1	
10.3(d)	Third Amendment to Lease, dated April 28, 2016, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and 34175 Ardenwood Venture, LLC	10-Q	8/8/2016	10.3	
10.4(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(a)	
10.4(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(b)	
10.4(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Purchase Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Purchase Agreement under the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended	S-1	5/19/2014	10.5(c)	
10.5(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan	S-8	7/14/2014	99.3	
10.5(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.6(b)	
10.5(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement and Restricted Stock Unit Award Grant Notice under the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.6(c)	
10.6#	Form of Indemnification Agreement for directors and officers	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.7	
10.7#	Amended and Restated Executive Employment Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Michael Raab	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.8	
10.8#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Mark Kaufmann	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.15	
10.9#	Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeffrey Jacobs, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.17	

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated by Reference			Filed Herewith
		Form	Date	Number	
10.10#	Offer Letter, dated August 11, 2011, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Mark Kaufmann	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.10	
10.11#	Offer Letter, dated May 2, 2008, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Jeff Jacobs, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.12	
10.12#	Offer Letter, dated December 28, 2009, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and David Rosenbaum, Ph.D.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.13	
10.13#	Offer Letter, dated November 21, 2012, by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Elizabeth Grammer, Esq.	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.14	
10.14#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan	S-8	7/14/2014	99.6	
10.15(a)#	Non-Employee Director Compensation Program	S-1/A	6/9/2014	10.21	
10.15(b)#	Description of amendments to Non-Employee Director Compensation Program	8-K	3/9/2017	N/A	
10.16	Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	10-Q	8/12/2015	10.2	
10.17	Registration Rights Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the investors signatory thereto, dated June 2, 2015	S-3	7/13/2015	99.1	
10.18	Securities Purchase Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the purchasers signatory thereto, dated July 14, 2016	10-Q	8/8/2016	10.1	
10.19	Registration Rights Agreement by and among Ardelyx, Inc. and the investors signatory thereto, dated July 14, 2016	10-Q	8/8/2016	10.2	
10.20(a)#	Ardelyx, Inc. 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/10/2016	99.1	
10.20(b)#	Form of Stock Option Grant Notice and Stock Option Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/10/2016	99.2	
10.20(c)#	Form of Restricted Stock Unit Award Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Unit Award Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/10/2016	99.3	
10.20(d)#	Form of Restricted Stock Award Grant Notice and Restricted Stock Award Agreement under the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan	S-8	11/10/16	99.4	
10.21#	Transition and Separation Agreement dated August 21, 2017, by and between the Company and Dr. Paul Korner	10-Q	11/7/2017	10.1	
10.22††	License Agreement, dated November 27, 2017, by and between Kyowa Hakko Kirin Co., Ltd. and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-K	3/14/2018	10.35	
10.23††	License Agreement, dated December 11, 2017, by and between Shanghai Fosun Pharmaceutical Industrial Development Co. Ltd. and Ardelyx, Inc.	10-K	3/14/2018	10.36	
10.24#	Second Amended and Restated Change in Control and Severance Agreement by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and Elizabeth Grammer.	10-Q	5/8/2018	10.0	
10.25#	Second Amended and Restated Change in Control and Severance Agreement by and between Ardelyx, Inc. and David P. Rosenbaum, Ph.D.	10-Q	5/8/2018	10.1	
10.26	Loan and Security Agreement, dated May 16, 2018, by and between the Company and Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank.	10-Q	8/7/2018	10.1	

Exhibit Number	Exhibit Description	Incorporated by Reference			Filed Herewith
		Form	Date	Number	
10.27	Exit Fee Agreement, dated May 16, 2018, by and between the Company and Solar Capital Ltd. and Western Alliance Bank.	10-Q	8/7/2018	10.2	
10.28#	Transition and Separation Agreement dated July 8, 2018, by and between the Company and Reginald Seeto, MBBS.	10-Q	8/7/2018	10.3	
10.29#	Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Program.	10-Q	5/7/2019	10.1	
10.30#	Transition and Separation Agreement dated November 25, 2019, by and between the Company and Mark Kaufmann.				X
21.1	Subsidiaries of the Registrant				X
23.1	Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm				X
31.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended				X
31.2	Certification of Principal Financial Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(a) and 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended				X
32.1	Certification of Principal Executive Officer and Principal Financial Officer Required Under Rule 13a-14(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and 18 U.S.C §1350				X
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document				X
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document				X
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document				X
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document				X
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase Document				X
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document				X

† Confidential treatment granted as to portions of this Exhibit. The confidential portions of this Exhibit have been omitted and are marked by asterisks.

†† Certain portions have been omitted pursuant to a confidential treatment request. Omitted information has been filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

# Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

Ardelyx, Inc.

Date: March 6, 2020

By: /s/ Michael Raab

Michael Raab
President Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

POWER OF ATTORNEY

Each person whose individual signature appears below hereby authorizes and appoints Michael Raab and Mark Kaufmann, and each of them, with full power of substitution and resubstitution and full power to act without the other, as his or her true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent to act in his or her name, place and stead and to execute in the name and on behalf of each person, individually and in each capacity stated below, and to file any and all amendments to this annual report on Form 10-K and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing, ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents or any of them or their or his substitute or substitutes may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue thereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

Signature	Title	Date
/s/ Michael Raab Michael Raab	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director *(Principal Executive Officer)*	March 6, 2020
/s/ Mark Kaufmann Mark Kaufmann	Chief Financial Officer *(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)*	March 6, 2020
/s/ David Mott David Mott	Chairman of the Board of Directors	March 6, 2020
/s/ Robert Bazemore Robert Bazemore	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ William Bertrand, Jr. William Bertrand, Jr.	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ Geoffrey A. Block Geoffrey A. Block, M.D.	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ Annalisa Jenkins Annalisa Jenkins, MBBS, FRCP	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ Jan M. Lundberg Jan M. Lundberg, Ph.D.	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ Gordon Ringold Gordon Ringold, Ph.D.	Director	March 6, 2020
/s/ Richard Rodgers Richard Rodgers	Director	March 6, 2020

DESCRIPTION OF THE REGISTRANT'S SECURITIES REGISTERED PURSUANT TO SECTION 12 OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

As of December 31, 2019, Ardelyx, Inc. ("we," "us," or "our") had one class of securities registered under Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended: our common stock, $0.0001 par value per share ("common stock").

Description of Capital Stock

The following summary describes our capital stock and does not purport to be complete. It is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to the material provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and our amended and restated bylaws, each of which are incorporated by reference as an exhibit to the Annual Report on Form 10-K of which this Exhibit 4.4 is a part, as well as of the Delaware General Corporation Law. For a complete description, we encourage you to read amended and restated certificate of incorporation, our amended and restated bylaws and the applicable provisions of the Delaware General Corporation Law for additional information.

General

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation authorizes 300,000,000 shares of common stock, $0.0001 par value per share, and 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock, $0.0001 par value per share.

Common Stock

Voting Rights

Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of directors. Accordingly, holders of a majority of the voting shares are able to elect all of the directors. In addition, the affirmative vote of holders of 66 2/3% of the voting power of all of the then outstanding voting stock will be required to take certain actions, including amending certain provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, such as the provisions relating to amending our amended and restated bylaws, the classified board and director liability.

Dividends

Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then outstanding preferred stock, holders of our common stock are entitled to receive dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors out of legally available funds.

Liquidation

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then outstanding shares of preferred stock.

Rights and Preferences

Holders of our common stock have no preemptive, conversion, subscription or other rights, and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to our common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our common stock are subject to and may be adversely affected by the rights of the holders of shares of any series of our preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

Fully Paid and Nonassessable.

All of our outstanding shares of common stock are, and the shares of common stock to be issued in this offering will be, fully paid and nonassessable.

Preferred Stock – Limitations on Rights of Holders of Common Stock

Our board of directors has the authority, without further action by our stockholders, to issue up to 5,000,000 shares of preferred stock in one or more series and to fix the rights, preferences, privileges and restrictions thereof. These rights, preferences and privileges could include dividend rights, conversion rights, voting rights, terms of redemption, liquidation preferences, sinking fund terms and the number of shares constituting, or the designation of, such series, any or all of which may be greater than the rights of common stock.The issuance of our preferred stock could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common stock and the likelihood that such holders will receive dividend payments and payments upon our liquidation. In addition, the issuance of preferred stock could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of our company or other corporate action. No shares of preferred stock are outstanding, and we have no present plan to issue any shares of preferred stock.

Anti-Takeover Effects of Provisions of our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, our Amended and Restated Bylaws and Delaware Law

Some provisions of Delaware law and our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and our amended and restated bylaws could make the following transactions more difficult: acquisition of us by means of a tender offer; acquisition of us by means of a proxy contest or otherwise; or removal of our incumbent officers and directors. It is possible that these provisions could make it more difficult to accomplish or could deter transactions that stockholders may otherwise consider to be in their best interest or in our best interests, including transactions that might result in a premium over the market price for our shares.

These provisions, summarized below, are expected to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with our board of directors. We believe that the benefits of increased protection of our potential ability to negotiate with the proponent of an unfriendly or unsolicited proposal to acquire or restructure us outweigh the disadvantages of discouraging these proposals because negotiation of these proposals could result in an improvement of their terms.

Delaware Anti-Takeover Statute

We are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which prohibits persons deemed “interested stockholders” from engaging in a “business combination” with a publicly-held Delaware corporation for three years following the date these persons become interested stockholders unless the business combination is, or the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder was, approved in a prescribed manner or another prescribed exception applies. Generally, an “interested stockholder” is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years prior to the determination of interested stockholder status did own, 15% or more of a corporation’s voting stock. Generally, a “business combination” includes a merger, asset or stock sale, or other transaction resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder. The existence of this provision may have an anti- takeover effect with respect to transactions not approved in advance by the board of directors, such as discouraging takeover attempts that might result in a premium over the market price of our common stock.

Undesignated Preferred Stock

The ability to authorize undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede the success of any attempt to change control of us. These and other provisions may have the effect of deterring hostile takeovers or delaying changes in control or management of our company.

Special Stockholder Meetings

Our amended and restated bylaws provide that a special meeting of stockholders may be called only by our chairman of the board of directors, Chief Executive Officer or President, or by a resolution adopted by a majority of our board of directors.

Requirements for Advance Notification of Stockholder Nominations and Proposals

Our amended and restated bylaws establish advance notice procedures with respect to stockholder proposals and the nomination of candidates for election as directors, other than nominations made by or at the direction of the board of directors or a committee of the board of directors.

Elimination of Stockholder Action by Written Consent

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation eliminates the right of stockholders to act by written consent without a meeting.

Classified Board; Election and Removal of Directors; Filling Vacancies

Our board of directors is divided into three classes. The directors in each class will serve for a three-year term, one class being elected

each year by our stockholders, with staggered three-year terms. Only one class of directors will be elected at each annual meeting of our stockholders, with the other classes continuing for the remainder of their respective three-year terms. Because our stockholders do not have cumulative voting rights, our stockholders holding a majority of the shares of common stock outstanding will be able to elect all of our directors. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides for the removal of any of our directors only for cause and requires at least a 66 2/3% stockholder vote. Furthermore, any vacancy on our board of directors, however occurring, including a vacancy resulting from an increase in the size of our board, may only be filled by a resolution of the board of directors unless the board of directors determines that such vacancies shall be filled by the stockholders. This system of electing and removing directors and filling vacancies may tend to discourage a third party from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us, because it generally makes it more difficult for stockholders to replace a majority of the directors.

Choice of Forum

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the exclusive forum for any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; any action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty, or other wrongdoing by, any of our directors, officers, employees or stockholders; any action asserting a claim against us or any of our directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation or our amended and restated bylaws; any action to interpret, apply, enforce or determine the validity of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation or our amended and restated bylaws; or any action asserting a claim against us or any of our directors, officers or employees that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Although our amended and restated certificate of incorporation contains the choice of forum provision described above, it is possible that a court could find that such a provision is inapplicable for a particular claim or action or that such provision is unenforceable.

Amendment of Charter Provisions

The amendment of any of the above provisions, except for the provision making it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock, would require approval by holders of at least 66 2/3% of the voting power of our then outstanding voting stock.

The provisions of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and our amended and restated bylaws could have the effect of discouraging others from attempting hostile takeovers and, as a consequence, they may also inhibit temporary fluctuations in the market price of our Common Stock that often result from actual or rumored hostile takeover attempts. These provisions may also have the effect of preventing changes in our management. It is possible that these provisions could make it more difficult to accomplish transactions that stockholders may otherwise deem to be in their best interests.

Limitations of Liability and Indemnification Matters

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation contains provisions that limit the liability of our directors for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Consequently, our directors will not be personally liable to us or our stockholders for monetary damages for any breach of fiduciary duties as directors, except liability for:

- any breach of the director’s duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- any act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- unlawful payments of dividends or unlawful stock repurchases or redemptions as provided in Section 174 of the Delaware General Corporation Law; or
- any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws provide that we are required to indemnify our directors and officers, in each case to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Our amended and restated bylaws also provide that we are obligated to advance expenses incurred by a director or officer in advance of the final disposition of any action or proceeding, and permit us to secure insurance on behalf of any officer, director, employee or other agent for any liability arising out of his or her actions in that capacity regardless of whether we would otherwise be permitted to indemnify him or her under Delaware law. We have entered and expect to continue to enter into agreements to indemnify our directors, executive officers and other employees as determined by our board of directors. With specified exceptions, these agreements provide for indemnification for related expenses including, among other things, attorneys’ fees, judgments, fines and settlement amounts incurred by any of these individuals in any action or proceeding. We believe that these bylaw provisions and indemnification agreements are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors and officers. We also maintain directors’ and officers’ liability insurance.

The limitation of liability and indemnification provisions in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws may discourage stockholders from bringing a lawsuit against our directors and officers for breach of their fiduciary duty. They may also reduce the likelihood of derivative litigation against our directors and officers, even though an action, if successful, might benefit us and our stockholders. Further, a stockholder’s investment may be adversely affected to the extent that we pay the costs of

settlement and damage.

The NASDAQ Global Market Listing

Our common stock is listed on The Nasdaq Global Market under the symbol “ARDX.”

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC. The transfer agent and registrar’s address is 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219.

TRANSITION AND SEPARATION AGREEMENT

This Transition and Separation Agreement (the "Agreement") by and between Mark Kaufmann ("Executive") and Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company"), is made effective as of the date Executive signs this Agreement (the "Effective Date") with reference to the following facts:

A. Executive currently serves as the Company's Chief Financial Officer.

B. Executive and the Company entered into an Amended and Restated Change in Control Severance Agreement effective as of June 6, 2014 (the "Severance Agreement") pursuant to which Executive is eligible for certain severance benefits in the event of a covered termination and Executive's satisfaction of certain continuing obligations to the Company.

C. Executive's employment with the Company and status as an officer and employee of the Company, will end effective upon the Resignation Date (as defined below).

D. Executive and the Company want to end their relationship amicably and also to establish the obligations of the parties including, without limitation, all amounts due and owing to Executive.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual covenants and agreements hereinafter set forth, the parties agree as follows:

1. Resignation Date. The Company and Executive acknowledge and agree that Executive's status as an officer and employee of the Company will end effective as of the earliest of (a) the later of (i) March 13, 2020 or (ii) the date that is five (5) business days following the filing of the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K (the "Form 10-K") for the fiscal year ended 2019 (such later date, the "Planned Resignation Date"), (b) the date Executive takes any action that constitutes "Cause" under the Severance Agreement and (c) the date Executive voluntarily resigns from the Company (such earliest date, the "Resignation Date"). Executive hereby agrees to execute such further document(s) as shall be determined by the Company as reasonably necessary or desirable to give effect to the termination of Executive's status as an officer of the Company; *provided* that such documents shall not be inconsistent with any of the terms of this Agreement. From the Effective Date through the Resignation Date, Executive's employment with the Company shall continue in effect, and Executive shall enjoy the same salary, benefits and other compensation terms as in effect on the Effective Date.

2. Severance Payments and Benefits. The Company hereby agrees, subject to (a) (i) the Resignation Date occurring on or after the Planned Resignation Date or (ii) Executive's involuntary termination of employment by the Company without Cause (as defined in the Severance Agreement) prior to the Planned Resignation Date, (b) Executive diligently and professionally executing his responsibilities under this Agreement, (c) Executive delivering to the Company a General Release of Claims substantially in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the "Release of Claims") on or within twenty-one (21) days following the Resignation Date, Executive not revoking the Release of Claims within the seven (7)-day period following his execution of the Release of Claims (the "Revocation Period"), and (d) Executive's performance of his continuing obligations under Section 8 below and otherwise pursuant to this Agreement and the Proprietary Information and Inventions Assignment Agreement entered into between Executive and the Company, as of August 15, 2011 (the "Confidential Information Agreement"), to provide the payments and benefits set forth in this Section 2.

(a) *Severance Payments*. Within five (5) business days following the end of the Revocation Period, the Company shall make a lump sum cash payment to Executive in an amount equal to $300,000 (the "Severance Payment"). The Severance Payment shall be subject to authorized payroll deductions and required tax withholding.

(b) *COBRA Reimbursement*. Provided that Executive timely elects to receive continued healthcare coverage pursuant to the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985, as amended, or applicable state law

(collectively referred to as "COBRA"), the Company will pay COBRA premiums otherwise required to be paid by Executive through the earlier of (i) the first anniversary of the Resignation Date, or (ii) the date upon which Executive and Executive's covered dependents, if any, become eligible for healthcare coverage under another employer's plan(s). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if any plan pursuant to which such benefits are provided is not, or ceases prior to the expiration of the period of continuation coverage to be, exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(a)(5), or (ii) the Company is otherwise unable to continue to cover Executive under its group health plans without penalty under applicable law (including without limitation, Section 2716 of the Public Health Service Act), then, in either case, an amount equal to each remaining Company subsidy shall thereafter be paid to Executive in substantially equal monthly installments. After the Company ceases to pay premiums pursuant to this Section 2(b), Executive may, if eligible, elect to continue healthcare coverage at Executive's expense in accordance the provisions of COBRA.

(c) *Performance Restricted Stock Unit.* Notwithstanding Executive's termination of employment, the performance restricted stock unit award granted to Executive by the Company on July 26, 2018, for 100,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock (the "PRSU Award"), shall vest, and the underlying shares of the Company Common Stock shall be issued, in the event that, on or prior to December 31, 2020, the Board of Directors of the Company, or its Compensation Committee, certifies that the Food & Drug Administration has accepted for filing the Company's New Drug Application for the tenapanor for the treatment of hyperphosphatemia. Other than as altered by this Agreement, the PRSU Award shall at all times remain subject in all respects to the terms and conditions of the applicable restricted stock unit award agreement between Executive and the Company (the "RSU Award Agreement") and the Company's applicable equity incentive plan. For the avoidance of doubt, the PRSU Award, to the extent unvested, shall terminate in accordance with the RSU Award Agreement on January 1, 2021.

3. 2019 Bonus; Final Paycheck; Payment of Accrued Wages and Expenses.

(a) *2019 Bonus*. Regardless of the date of Executive's termination of employment, Executive shall be paid the 2019 bonus awarded him by the Board of Directors, or the appropriate committee thereof, which shall be determined in the manner consistent with that of all executives of the Company. Executive shall remain eligible for his 2019 bonus in accordance with its terms irrespective of whether Executive executes this Agreement or a Release of Claims.

(b) *Final Paycheck*. On, or as soon as administratively practicable following, the Resignation Date, the Company will pay Executive all accrued but unpaid base salary and all accrued and unused vacation or other paid time off earned through the Resignation Date, subject to standard payroll deductions and required withholding. Executive is entitled to these payments regardless of whether Executive executes this Agreement or a Release of Claims.

(c) *Business Expenses*. The Company shall reimburse Executive for all outstanding expenses incurred prior to the Resignation Date which are consistent with the Company's policies in effect from time to time with respect to travel and other business expenses, subject to the Company's requirements with respect to reporting and documenting such expenses, including, without limitation, expenses incurred pursuant to Executive's services as a director of any of the Company's subsidiaries. Executive is entitled to these payments regardless of whether Executive executes this Agreement or a Release of Claims.

(d) *Equity Awards.* Other than with respect to the PRSU Award discussed in Section 2(c) and other than acceleration of vesting of equity awards that may occur pursuant to the terms of Section 5 below, all unvested shares subject to equity awards held by Executive on the Resignation Date shall terminate and be forfeited as of the Resignation Date. If Executive desires to exercise any stock option that is vested as of the Resignation Date, Executive must follow the procedures set forth in the applicable stock option agreement applicable to the vested option (each an "Option Agreement"), including payment of the exercise price and any tax withholding obligations. If by the expiration dates set forth in the applicable Option Agreement, the Company has not received a duly executed notice of exercise and remuneration in accordance with Executive's Option Agreement, the vested option subject thereto shall automatically terminate for no consideration and be of no further effect.

5. Full Payment. Executive acknowledges that the payment and arrangements herein shall constitute full and complete satisfaction of any and all amounts properly due and owing to Executive as a result of his employment with the Company and the termination thereof; provided, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, if the

Company experiences a Change in Control (as defined in the Severance Agreement) prior to the 3-month anniversary of the Resignation Date, then (i) each outstanding equity award, including, without limitation, each stock option and restricted stock award, held by Executive as of the Resignation Date shall, as of the later of (a) the Resignation Date or (b) the date of the Change in Control, automatically become vested and, if applicable, exercisable and any forfeiture restrictions or rights of repurchase thereon shall immediately lapse, in each case, with respect to one hundred percent (100%) of the shares subject thereto, (ii) to the extent vested after giving effect to the acceleration provided in (i) above, each stock option held by Executive shall remain exercisable until the earlier of the original expiration date for such stock option or the first anniversary of the Resignation Date, and (iii) Executive shall be entitled to receive an additional $100,000 in severance, payable in a lump sum within thirty (30) days following the closing of the Change in Control and subject to authorized payroll deductions and required tax withholding. Executive further acknowledges that, other than the Confidential Information Agreement, the RSU Award Agreement and the Option Agreements, and except as provided in the preceding sentence, this Agreement shall supersede each agreement entered into between Executive and the Company regarding Executive's employment, including, without limitation, the Severance Agreement and any offer letter, or employment agreement, and each such agreement other than the RSU Award Agreement, the Option Agreements and the Confidential Information Agreement shall be deemed terminated and of no further effect as of the Resignation Date.

6. Executive's Release of the Company. Executive agrees that the consideration set forth in this Agreement represents settlement in full of all outstanding obligations owed to Executive by the Company and its current and former officers, directors, employees, agents, investors, attorneys, affiliates, divisions, and subsidiaries, and predecessor and successor corporations and assigns (collectively, the "Releasees").

(a) Executive, on his own behalf and on behalf of his family members, heirs, executors, administrators, agents, and assigns, hereby and forever releases the Releasees from, and agrees not to sue concerning, or in any manner to institute, prosecute, or pursue, any claim, complaint, charge, duty, obligation, or cause of action relating to any matters of any kind, whether presently known or unknown, suspected or unsuspected, that Executive may possess against any of the Releasees arising from any omissions, acts, facts, or damages that have occurred up until and including the Effective Date of this Agreement, including, without limitation:

(i) any and all claims relating to or arising from Executive's employment relationship with Company and the termination of that relationship;

(ii) any and all claims for wrongful discharge of employment; termination in violation of public policy; discrimination; harassment; retaliation; breach of contract, both express and implied; breach of covenant of good faith and fair dealing, both express and implied; promissory estoppel; negligent or intentional infliction of emotional distress; fraud; negligent or intentional misrepresentation; negligent or intentional interference with contract or prospective economic advantage; unfair business practices; defamation; libel; slander; negligence; personal injury; assault; battery; invasion of privacy; false imprisonment; conversion; and disability benefits;

(iii) any and all claims for violation of any federal, state, or municipal statute, including, but not limited to, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; the Civil Rights Act of 1991; the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990; the Equal Pay Act; the Fair Labor Standards Act, except as prohibited by law; the Fair Credit Reporting Act; the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974; the Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act; the Family and Medical Leave Act, except as prohibited by law; the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, except as prohibited by law; the Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act; the California Family Rights Act; the California Labor Code, except as prohibited by law; the California Workers' Compensation Act, except as prohibited by law; and the California Fair Employment and Housing Act;

(iv) any and all claims for violation of the federal or any state constitution;

(v) any and all claims arising out of any other laws and regulations relating to employment or employment discrimination;

(vi) any claim for any loss, cost, damage, or expense arising out of any dispute over the non-withholding or other tax treatment of any of the proceeds received by Executive as a result of this Agreement;

(vii) any and all claims for attorneys' fees and costs.

(b) Executive agrees that the release set forth in this section shall be and remain in effect in all respects as a complete general release as to the matters released. This release does not extend to any obligations incurred under this Agreement, the RSU Award Agreement or the Option Agreements. This release does not release claims or rights that cannot be released as a matter of law, including, but not limited to, claims under Division 3, Article 2 of the California Labor Code (which includes California Labor Code Section 2802 regarding indemnity for necessary expenditures or losses by Executive) any other indemnification, defense, or hold-harmless rights Executive may have, and Executive's right to bring to the attention of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or California Department of Fair Employment and Housing claims of discrimination, harassment or retaliation; provided, however, that Executive does release his right to obtain damages for any such claims. This release does not release claims or rights that Executive may have as a shareholder of the Company or for benefits under any benefit plan or to participation in any such plan pursuant to the terms thereof or applicable law.

(c) Executive acknowledges that he has been advised to consult with legal counsel and is familiar with the provisions of California Civil Code Section 1542, a statute that otherwise prohibits unknown claims, which provides as follows:

A GENERAL RELEASE DOES NOT EXTEND TO CLAIMS WHICH THE CREDITOR OR RELEASING PARTY DOES NOT KNOW OR SUSPECT TO EXIST IN HIS OR HER FAVOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTING THE RELEASE, AND THAT, IF KNOWN BY HIM OR HER WOULD HAVE MATERIALLY AFFECTED HIS OR HER SETTLEMENT WITH THE DEBTOR OR RELEASED PARTY.

Executive, being aware of said code section, agrees to expressly waive any rights he may have thereunder, as well as under any other statute or common law principles of similar effect.

7. Non-Disparagement; Transfer of Company Property. Executive further agrees that:

(a) *Non-Disparagement*. Executive agrees that he shall not disparage, criticize or defame the Company, its affiliates and their respective affiliates, directors, officers, agents, partners, stockholders, employees, products, services, technology or business, either publicly or privately. The Company agrees that it shall not disparage, criticize or defame Executive, either publicly or privately. Nothing in this Section 7(a) shall have application to any evidence or testimony required by any court, arbitrator or government agency.

(b) *Transfer of Company Property*. On or before the Resignation Date, Executive shall turn over to the Company all files, memoranda, records, and other documents, and any other physical or personal property which are the property of the Company and which he has in his possession, custody or control at such date.

8. Confidentiality; Non-Solicitation.

(a) *Confidentiality*.

(i) While Executive is employed by the Company, and thereafter, Executive shall not directly or indirectly disclose or make available to any person, firm, corporation, association or other entity for any reason or purpose whatsoever, any Confidential Information (as defined below). On the Resignation Date, all Confidential Information in Executive's possession that is in written or other tangible form (together with all copies or duplicates thereof, including computer files) shall be returned to the Company and shall not be retained by Executive or furnished to any third party, in any form except as provided herein; *provided, however,* that Executive shall not be obligated to treat as confidential, or return to the Company copies of any Confidential Information that (a) was publicly known at the time of disclosure to Executive, or (b) becomes publicly known or available thereafter other than by any means in violation of this Agreement, the Confidential Information Agreement or any other duty owed to the Company by any person or entity. For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Confidential Information" shall mean information, technical data, know-how or trade secrets disclosed to Executive or known by Executive as a consequence of or through his or her relationship with the Company, relating to research, products, developments, inventions, processes, techniques, chemical structures, finances, business plans or regulatory strategies of the Company and its affiliates. In addition, for the avoidance of doubt, Executive shall continue to be subject to the Confidential Information Agreement.

(ii) For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this Agreement will be construed to prohibit Executive from filing a charge with, reporting possible violations to, or participating or cooperating with any governmental agency or entity, including but not limited to the EEOC, the Department of Justice, the Securities and Exchange Commission, Congress, or any agency Inspector General, or making other disclosures that are protected under the whistleblower, anti-discrimination, or anti-retaliation provisions of federal, state or local law or regulation; provided, however, that Executive may not disclose information of the Company or any of its affiliates that is protected by the attorney-client privilege, except as otherwise required by law. Executive does not need the prior authorization of the Company to make any such reports or disclosures, and Executive is not required to notify the Company that he has made such reports or disclosures. Furthermore, in accordance with 18 U.S.C. § 1833, notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement: (A) Executive shall not be in breach of this Agreement, and shall not be held criminally or civilly liable under any federal or state trade secret law (x) for the disclosure of a trade secret that is made in confidence to a federal, state, or local government official or to an attorney solely for the purpose of reporting or investigating a suspected violation of law, or (y) for the disclosure of a trade secret that is made in a complaint or other document filed in a lawsuit or other proceeding, if such filing is made under seal; and (B) if Executive files a lawsuit for retaliation by the Company for reporting a suspected violation of law, Executive may disclose the trade secret to Executive's attorney, and may use the trade secret information in the court proceeding, if Executive files any document containing the trade secret under seal, and does not disclose the trade secret, except pursuant to court order.

(b) *Non-Solicitation.* In addition to each Executive's obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement, Executive shall not for a period of two (2) years following Executive's termination of employment for any reason, either on Executive's own account or jointly with or as a manager, agent, officer, employee, consultant, partner, joint venturer, owner or stockholder or otherwise on behalf of any other person, firm or corporation, directly or indirectly solicit or attempt to solicit away from the Company any of its officers or employees or offer employment to any person who is an officer or employee of the Company; *provided, however,* that a general advertisement to which an employee of the Company responds shall in no event be deemed to result in a breach of this Section 8(b). Executive also agrees not to harass or disparage the Company or its employees, clients, directors or agents or divert or attempt to divert any actual or potential business of the Company. If it is determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in any state that any restriction in this Section 8(b) is excessive in duration or scope or is unreasonable or unenforceable under the laws of that state, it is the intention of the parties that such restriction may be modified or amended by the court to render it enforceable to the maximum extent permitted by the law of that state.

9. Executive Representations. Executive warrants and represents that (a) he has not filed or authorized the filing of any complaints, charges or lawsuits against the Company or any affiliate of the Company with any governmental agency or court, and that if, unbeknownst to Executive, such a complaint, charge or lawsuit has been filed on his behalf, he will use reasonable best efforts to immediately cause it to be withdrawn and dismissed, and (b) he has no known workplace injuries or occupational diseases and has been provided and/or has not been denied any leave requested under the Family and Medical Leave Act or any similar state law, and (c) he has received the Company's Insider Trading Compliance Policy and agrees to continue to abide by all applicable terms therein, including specifically, Section IV (C) which states, "With the exception of the preclearance requirement, the insider trading laws continue to apply to all transactions in the Company's securities even after termination of service of service to the Company. If an individual is in the possession of material non-public information when his or her service terminates, that individual may not trade in the Company's securities until that information has become public or is no longer material."

10. No Assignment by Executive. Executive warrants and represents that no portion of any of the matters released herein, and no portion of any recovery or settlement to which Executive might be entitled, has been assigned or transferred to any other person, firm or corporation not a party to this Agreement, in any manner, including by way of subrogation or operation of law or otherwise. If any claim, action, demand or suit should be made or instituted against the Company or any other Releasee because of any actual assignment, subrogation or transfer by Executive, Executive agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and all other Releasees against such claim, action, suit or demand, including necessary expenses of investigation, attorneys' fees and costs. In the event of Executive's death, this Agreement shall inure to the benefit of Executive and Executive's executors, administrators, heirs, distributees, devisees, and legatees. None of Executive's rights or obligations may be assigned

or transferred by Executive, other than Executive's rights to payments hereunder, which may be transferred only upon Executive's death by will or operation of law.

11. Governing Law. This Agreement shall be construed and enforced in accordance with, and the rights of the parties shall be governed by, the laws of the State of California or, where applicable, United States federal law, in each case, without regard to any conflicts of laws provisions or those of any state other than California.

12. Miscellaneous. This Agreement, together with the Confidential Information Agreement, the RSU Award Agreement, the Option Agreements and the form of General Release of Claims attached as Exhibit A hereto comprise the entire agreement between the parties with regard to the subject matter hereof and supersedes, in their entirety, any other agreements between Executive and the Company with regard to the subject matter hereof, including without limitation, the Severance Agreement. Executive acknowledges that there are no other agreements, written, oral or implied, and that he may not rely on any prior negotiations, discussions, representations or agreements. This Agreement may be modified only in writing, and such writing must be signed by both parties and recited that it is intended to modify this Agreement. This Agreement may be executed in separate counterparts, each of which is deemed to be an original and all of which taken together constitute one and the same agreement.

13. Company Assignment and Successors. The Company shall assign its rights and obligations under this Agreement to any successor to all or substantially all of the business or the assets of the Company (by merger or otherwise). This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the Company and its successors, assigns, personnel and legal representatives.

14. Maintaining Confidential Information. Executive reaffirms his obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement. Executive acknowledges and agrees that the payments and benefits provided in Sections 2 and 4 above shall be subject to Executive's continued compliance with Executive's obligations under the Confidential Information Agreement.

15. Executive's Cooperation. Executive further agrees that:

(a) *Transition*. From the Effective Date through the Resignation Date, Executive shall continue to provide full-time services to the Company, shall continue to fully discharge all duties of the position of the Chief Financial Officer in a diligent and professional manner, and shall cooperate with the Company in the preparation and presentation of public statements regarding Executive's planned departure from the Company.

(b) *Investigations*. After the Resignation Date, Executive shall use reasonable efforts to cooperate with the Company and its affiliates, upon the Company's reasonable request, with respect to any internal investigation or administrative, regulatory or judicial proceeding involving matters within the scope of Executive's duties and responsibilities to the Company or its affiliates during his employment with the Company (including, without limitation, Executive being available to the Company upon reasonable notice for interviews and factual investigations, appearing at the Company's reasonable request to give testimony without requiring service of a subpoena or other legal process, and turning over to the Company all relevant Company documents which are or may have come into Executive's possession during his employment); *provided*, *however*, that any such request by the Company shall not be unduly burdensome or interfere with Executive's personal schedule or ability to engage in gainful employment, consulting or other work, and the Company shall pay, upon invoicing by Executive, all reasonably incurred fees for his time in so cooperating (which shall not exceed one thousand dollars ($1,000) per eight hour day), and reimburse Executive for his actual, reasonable, out-of-pocket expenses (including without limitation, any and all reasonable attorney's fees and costs) incurred in connection with providing any such cooperation.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Transition and Separation Agreement to be duly executed and delivered as of the date indicated next to their respective signatures below.

DATED: 11/25/2019

/Mark Kaufmann/
Mark Kaufmann

ARDELYX, INC.

DATED: 11/25/2019

By: /Mike Raab/
Mike Raab, President & CEO

EXHIBIT A

GENERAL RELEASE OF CLAIMS

This General Release of Claims ("Release") is entered into as of , between Mark Kaufmann ("Executive") and Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company") (collectively referred to herein as the "Parties"), effective eight (8) days after Executive's signature hereto (the "Effective Date"), unless Executive revokes his acceptance of this Release as provided in Paragraph 1(c), below.

1. Executive's Release of the Company.

(a) Executive, on his own behalf and on behalf of his family members, heirs, executors, administrators, agents, and assigns, hereby and forever releases the Company and its current and former officers, directors, employees, agents, investors, attorneys, affiliates, divisions, and subsidiaries, and predecessor and successor corporations and assigns (the "Releasees") from, and agrees not to sue concerning, or in any manner to institute, prosecute, or pursue, any claim, complaint, charge, duty, obligation, or cause of action relating to any matters of any kind, whether presently known or unknown, suspected or unsuspected, that Executive may possess against any of the Releasees arising from any omissions, acts, facts, or damages that have occurred up until and including the date Executive signs this Release, including, without limitation:

(i) any and all claims relating to or arising from Executive's employment relationship with Company and the termination of that relationship;

(ii) any and all claims for wrongful discharge of employment; termination in violation of public policy; discrimination; harassment; retaliation; breach of contract, both express and implied; breach of covenant of good faith and fair dealing, both express and implied; promissory estoppel; negligent or intentional infliction of emotional distress; fraud; negligent or intentional misrepresentation; negligent or intentional interference with contract or prospective economic advantage; unfair business practices; defamation; libel; slander; negligence; personal injury; assault; battery; invasion of privacy; false imprisonment; conversion; and disability benefits;

(iii) any and all claims for violation of any federal, state, or municipal statute, including, but not limited to, Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; the Civil Rights Act of 1991; the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990; the Equal Pay Act; the Fair Labor Standards Act, except as prohibited by law; the Fair Credit Reporting Act; the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967; the Older Workers Benefit Protection Act; the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974; the Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act; the Family and Medical Leave Act, except as prohibited by law; the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, except as prohibited by law; the Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act; the California Family Rights Act; the California Labor Code, except as prohibited by law; the California Workers' Compensation Act, except as prohibited by law; and the California Fair Employment and Housing Act;

(iv) any and all claims for violation of the federal or any state constitution;

(v) any and all claims arising out of any other laws and regulations relating to employment or employment discrimination;

(vi) any claim for any loss, cost, damage, or expense arising out of any dispute over the non-withholding or other tax treatment of any of the proceeds received by Executive as a result of the Transition and Separation Agreement entered into between the Parties as of [_____], 2019 (the "Transition and Separation Agreement");

(vii) any claim for breach of contract or breach of the implied covenant of good faith and fair dealing;

(viii) any and all claims for attorneys' fees and costs.

(b) Executive agrees that the release set forth in this Section shall be and remain in effect in all respects as a complete general release as to the matters released. This release does not extend to any obligations incurred under

the Transition and Separation Agreement or the Option Agreements (as defined in the Transition and Separation Agreement). This release does not release claims or rights that cannot be released as a matter of law, including, but not limited to, claims under Division 3, Article 2 of the California Labor Code (which includes California Labor Code Section 2802 regarding indemnity for necessary expenditures or losses by Executive) any other indemnification, defense, or hold-harmless rights Executive may have, and Executive's right to bring to the attention of the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission or California Department of Fair Employment and Housing claims of discrimination, harassment or retaliation; provided, however, that Executive does release his right to obtain damages for any such claims. This release does not release claims or rights that Executive may have as a shareholder of the Company or for vested benefits under any benefit plan or to continued participation in any such plan pursuant to the terms thereof or applicable law.

(c) Acknowledgment of Waiver of Claims under ADEA. Executive acknowledges that he is waiving and releasing any rights he may have under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act of 1967 ("ADEA"), and that this waiver and release is knowing and voluntary. Executive acknowledges that this waiver and release does not apply to any rights or claims that may arise under the ADEA after the Effective Date of this Release. Executive acknowledges that the consideration given for this waiver and release is in addition to anything of value to which Executive was already entitled. Executive further acknowledges that he has been advised by this writing that: (a) he should consult with an attorney prior to executing this Release; (b) he has twenty-one (21) days within which to consider this Release; (c) he has seven (7) days following his execution of this Release to revoke this Release; (d) this Release shall not be effective until after the revocation period has expired and Executive will not receive the severance and other benefits provided by Section 2 of the Transition and Separation Agreement unless and until the revocation period has expired; and (e) nothing in this Release prevents or precludes Executive from challenging or seeking a determination in good faith of the validity of this waiver under the ADEA, nor does it impose any condition precedent, penalties, or costs for doing so, unless specifically authorized by federal law. In the event Executive signs this Release and returns it to the Company's General Counsel in less than the 21-day period identified above, Executive hereby acknowledges that he has freely and voluntarily chosen to waive the time period allotted for considering this Release. To revoke his acceptance of this Release, Executive must contact the Company's General Counsel by email at egrammer@ardelyx.com no later than 5 p.m. on the 7th day following Executive's signature of this Release.

(d) California Civil Code Section 1542. Executive acknowledges that he has been advised to consult with legal counsel and is familiar with the provisions of California Civil Code Section 1542, a statute that otherwise prohibits unknown claims, which provides as follows:

A GENERAL RELEASE DOES NOT EXTEND TO CLAIMS WHICH THE CREDITOR OR RELEASING PARTY DOES NOT KNOW OR SUSPECT TO EXIST IN HIS OR HER FAVOR AT THE TIME OF EXECUTING THE RELEASE, AND THAT, IF KNOWN BY HIM OR HER WOULD HAVE MATERIALLY AFFECTED HIS OR HER SETTLEMENT WITH THE DEBTOR OR RELEASED PARTY.

Executive, being aware of said code section, agrees to expressly waive any rights he may have thereunder, as well as under any other statute or common law principles of similar effect.

2. Executive Representations. Executive represents and warrants that:

(a) To Executive's knowledge, Executive has returned to the Company all Company property in Executive's possession and if he discovers additional Company property in his possession he will promptly return it to the Company;

(b) Except as Executive has informed the Company in writing, Executive is not owed wages, commissions, bonuses or other compensation, other than any payments that become due under Sections 3 and 4(b) of the Transition and Separation Agreement;

(c) During the course of Executive's employment Executive did not sustain any injuries for which Executive might be entitled to compensation pursuant to worker's compensation law or Executive has disclosed any injuries of which he is currently, reasonably aware for which he might be entitled to compensation pursuant to worker's compensation law;

(d) From the date Executive executed the Transition and Separation Agreement through the date Executive executes this Release, Executive has not made any disparaging comments about the Company, nor will Executive do so in the future; and

(e) Executive has not initiated any adversarial proceedings of any kind against the Company or against any other person or entity released herein, nor will Executive do so in the future with respect to any claims released hereby, except as specifically allowed by this Release.

3. Continuing Obligations. Executive reaffirms his obligations under the Transition and Separation Agreement and under the Confidential Information Agreement (as defined in the Transition and Separation Agreement).

4. Cooperation with the Company. Executive reaffirms his obligations to cooperate with the Company pursuant to Section 15 of the Transition and Separation Agreement.

5. Severability. The provisions of this Release are severable. If any provision is held to be invalid or unenforceable, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision.

6. Choice of Law. This Release shall in all respects be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, including all matters of construction, validity and performance, without regard to conflicts of law principles.

7. Integration Clause. This Release and the Transition and Separation Agreement, the Confidential Information Agreement, the RSU Award Agreement and the Option Agreements contain the Parties' entire agreement with regard to the transition and separation of Executive's employment, and supersede and replace any prior agreements as to those matters, whether oral or written, including without limitation, the Severance Agreement. This Release may not be changed or modified, in whole or in part, except by an instrument in writing signed by Executive and the President & Chief Executive Officer of the Company.

8. Execution in Counterparts. This Release may be executed in counterparts with the same force and effectiveness as though executed in a single document. Facsimile signatures shall have the same force and effectiveness as original signatures.

9. Intent to be Bound. The Parties have carefully read this Release in its entirety; fully understand and agree to its terms and provisions; and intend and agree that it is final and binding on all Parties.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, and intending to be legally bound, the Parties have executed the foregoing on the dates shown below.

EXECUTIVE	ARDELYX, INC.
Mark Kaufmann	By: Mike Raab Title: President & CEO
Date:	Date:

Exhibit 21.1

SUBSIDIARIES OF THE REGISTRANT

Name	Jurisdiction
None	

Exhibit 23.1

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the following Registration Statements:

(1) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-197408) pertaining to the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended, the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan and the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.

(2) Registration Statements on Form S-8 (Nos. 333-202663 and 333-230156) pertaining to the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan and the 2014 Employee Stock Purchase Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.

(3) Registration Statements on Form S-3 (Nos. 333-205630, 333-213085 and 333-217441) of Ardelyx, Inc.

(4) Registration Statements on Form S-8 (Nos. 333-210079, 333-216154 and 333-223694) pertaining to the 2014 Equity Incentive Award Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.

(5) Registration Statement on Form S-8 (No. 333-214538) pertaining to the 2016 Employment Commencement Incentive Plan of Ardelyx, Inc.

of our reports dated March 6, 2020, with respect to the financial statements of Ardelyx, Inc. and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting of Ardelyx, Inc. included in this Annual Report (Form 10-K) of Ardelyx, Inc. for the year ended December 31, 2019.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP

Redwood City, California
March 6, 2020

Exhibit 31.1

CERTIFICATION

I, Michael Raab, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Ardelyx, Inc.;

2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;

3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;

4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:

   (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;

   (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

   (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and

   (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and

5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):

   (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and

   (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 6, 2020

By: /s/ Michael Raab

Michael Raab
President, Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

Exhibit 31.2

CERTIFICATION

I, Mark Kaufmann, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Ardelyx, Inc.;

2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;

3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;

4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:

   (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;

   (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

   (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and

   (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and

5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):

   (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and

   (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 6, 2020

By: /s/ Mark Kaufmann

Mark Kaufmann
Chief Financial Officer
(Principal Financial Officer)

Exhibit 32.1

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906
OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Ardelyx, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ending December 31, 2019, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), Michael Raab, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Mark Kaufmann, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, respectively, do each hereby certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

(1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and

(2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result of operations of the Company.

Date: March 6, 2020

By: /s/ Michael Raab
Michael Raab
President, Chief Executive Officer and Director
(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: March 6, 2020

By: /s/ Mark Kaufmann
Mark Kaufmann
Chief Financial Officer
(Principal Financial Officer)